Minna no NihongoⅠ
みんなの日本語
初級Ⅰ 翻訳・文法解説 英語版
Translation & Grammatical Notes
Minna no Nihongo
みんなの日本語
初級 I 翻訳・文法解説 英語版
Translation & Grammatical Notes
As the title *Minna no Nihongo* indicates, this book has been designed to make the study of Japanese as enjoyable and interesting as possible for students and teachers alike. Over three years in the planning and compilation, it stands as a complete textbook in itself while acting as a companion volume to the highly regarded *Shin Nihongo no Kiso*.

As readers may know, *Shin Nihongo no Kiso* is a comprehensive introduction to elementary Japanese that serves as a highly efficient resource enabling students wishing to master basic Japanese conversation to do so in the shortest possible time. As such, although it was originally developed for use by AOTS's technical trainees, it is now used by a wide range of people both in Japan and abroad.

The teaching of Japanese is branching out in many different ways. Japanese economic and industrial growth has led to a greater level of interchange between Japan and other countries, and non-Japanese from a wide variety of backgrounds have come to Japan with a range of different objectives and are now living within local communities here. The changes in the social milieu surrounding the teaching of Japanese that have resulted from this influx of people from other countries have in turn influenced the individual situations in which Japanese is taught. There is now a greater diversity of learning needs, and they require individual responses.

It is against this background, and in response to the opinions and hopes expressed by a large number of people who have been involved in the teaching of Japanese for many years both in Japan and elsewhere, that 3A Corporation proudly publishes *Minna no Nihongo*. While the book continues to make use of the clarity and ease of understanding provided by the special features, key learning points and learning methods of *Shin Nihongo no Kiso*, the scenes, situations and characters in *Minna no Nihongo* have been made more universal in order to appeal to a wider range of learners. Its contents have been enhanced in this way to allow all kinds of students to use it for studying Japanese with pleasure.

*Minna no Nihongo* is aimed at anyone who urgently needs to learn to communicate in Japanese in any situation, whether at work, school, college or in their local community. Although it is an introductory text, efforts have been made to make the exchanges between Japanese and foreign characters in the book reflect Japanese
social conditions and everyday life as faithfully as possible. While it is intended principally for those who have already left full-time education, it can also be recommended as an excellent textbook for university entrance courses as well as short-term intensive courses at technical colleges and universities.

We at 3A Corporation are continuing actively to produce new study materials designed to meet the individual needs of an increasingly wide range of learners, and we sincerely hope that readers will continue to give us their valued support.

In conclusion, I should like to mention the extensive help we received in the preparation of this text, in the form of suggestions and comments from various quarters and trials of the materials in actual lessons, for which we are extremely grateful. 3A Corporation intends to continue extending its network of friendship all over the world through activities such as the publishing of Japanese study materials, and we hope that everyone who knows us will continue to lend us their unstinting encouragement and support in this.

Iwao Ogawa
President, 3A Corporation
March 1998
EXPLANATORY NOTES

I. Structure
The learning materials consist of a Main Text, a Translation and Grammar Text and a set of cassette tapes. The Translation and Grammar Text is currently available in English. Versions in other languages will be published shortly.

The materials have been prepared with the main emphasis on listening and speaking Japanese; they do not provide instruction in reading and writing hiragana, katakana or kanji.

II. Content and Method of Use

1. Main Text

1) Japanese Pronunciation

This section gives examples of the main characteristics of Japanese pronunciation.

2) Classroom instructions, greetings, numerals

These are useful for understanding classroom instructions and daily greetings. They are frequently used by teachers in class.

3) Lessons

There are 25 lessons, and each contains the following:

① Sentence Patterns

Basic sentence patterns are shown in the order they appear.

② Example Sentences

A small dialogue in the style of a question and answer is given to show how the sentence patterns are used in practical conversation. New adverbs, conjunctions, and other grammatical points are also introduced.

③ Conversation

In the conversations, various foreign people staying in Japan appear in a variety of situations. The conversations include everyday expressions and greetings. As they are simple, learning them by heart is recommended. If time allows, students should try developing the conversation by applying the reference words given in each lesson of the Translation and Grammar Text in order to maximize their communication skills.
4. Drills

The drills are divided into three levels: A, B, and C.

Drill A is visually designed in chart style to help understanding of the grammatical structure. The style helps students to learn systematically the basic sentence patterns through substitution drills, and applying verb forms and conjugations following the chart.

Drill B has various drill patterns to strengthen students’ grasp of the basic sentence patterns. Follow the directions given in each practice. Drills marked with a $\#$ sign use pictorial charts.

Drill C is given in discourse style to show how the sentence patterns function in actual situations, and to enhance practical oral skills. Do not simply read, repeat and substitute, but try making your own substitution, enrich the content, and develop the story.

5. Practice

Two kinds of practices are given: one type for listening ( ), and the other for grammar practice.

The listening practice is further divided into a question asking for a personal answer, and a question confirming the key point of the given discourse. The listening practices are designed to strengthen students’ aural skills, while the grammar practices check comprehension of vocabulary and the grammar points in the lessons studied.

The reading practices mostly require students to give a true or false response after reading a simple story compiled with words and sentence patterns from the lessons learned.

6. Review

This is provided to enable students to go over the essential points every several lessons studied.

7. Summary

At the end of the Main Text, a summary of grammatical points is given, such as the use of the particles, verb forms, adverbs and conjunctions, using example sentences appearing in the respective lessons.

8. Index

This includes classroom instructions, greetings, numerals, new
vocabulary, and idiomatic expressions introduced in each lesson of the Main Text.

2. Translation and Grammar Text

1) Explanations of the general features and pronunciation of Japanese as well as the Japanese writing system

2) Translation of classroom instructions and greetings in the Main Text

3) The following are given in each of the 25 lessons.
   ① new vocabulary and its translation
   ② translation of Sentence Patterns, Example Sentences, and Conversation
   ③ useful words related to the lesson and small pieces of information on Japan and the Japanese
   ④ explanation of essential grammar appearing in the lesson

4) Translation of the particles, how to use the forms, adverbs and adverbial expressions, and various conjugations found at the back of the Main Text

5) Tables showing how to express numbers, time, periods of time, and counters, etc. including items which the textbook does not cover

3. Cassette Tapes

On the cassette tapes, Vocabulary, Sentence Patterns, Example Sentences, Drill C, Conversation and listening comprehension questions of the Practice section are recorded.

Students should pay attention to the pronunciation and intonation when listening to the Vocabulary, Sentence Patterns and Example Sentences. When listening to Drill C and Conversation, try to get accustomed to the natural speed of the language.

4. Kanji Usage

1) Kanji usage is based on 常用漢字表, which is an official list of the most commonly used Chinese characters in Japan.
   ① 熟字訓 (words which are made by a combination of two or more kanji and have a special reading) shown in the Appendix Chart of 常用漢字表
are written in kanji.

e.g. 友達 friend 果物 fruit 眼鏡 glasses

② Proper nouns are written with their own Chinese characters even if their readings are non-standard.

e.g. 大阪 Osaka 奈良 Nara 歌舞伎 Kabuki

2) For freeing students from confusion, some words are given in kana although they are included in 常用漢字表 and its Appendix Chart.

e.g. ある (有る possess・在る exist) たぶん (多分) perhaps きのう (昨日) yesterday

3) Numbers are principally shown in Arabic numerals.

e.g. 9時 9 o’clock 4月1日 1st April 1つ one (thing)

However kanji is used in the following cases.

e.g. 一人で by oneself 一度 one time 一万円札 ten thousand yen bill

5. Miscellaneous

1) Words which can be omitted from a sentence are enclosed in square brackets [ ].

e.g. 父は 54[歳]です。 My father is 54 years old.

2) Synonyms are enclosed in round brackets ( ).

e.g. だれ (どなた) who

3) The part for an alternative word is denoted by ～.

e.g. ～はいかがですか。 How would you like ～?

If the alternative part is a numeral, - is used.

e.g. -歳 - years old -円 - yen -時間 - hours
1. Learn each word carefully.
The *Translation & Grammatical Notes* introduces the new words for each lesson. First, listen to the tape and learn these words thoroughly, paying special attention to the correct pronunciation and accent. Try to make sentences with the new words. It is important to memorize not only a word itself, but its use in a sentence.

2. Practice the sentence patterns.
Make sure you understand the meaning of each sentence pattern, and do *Drills A* and *B* until you have mastered the pattern. Say the sentences aloud, especially when doing *Drill B*.

3. Practice the conversation drills.
Sentence-pattern practice is followed by conversation practice. The example conversations show the various situations in actual daily life in which people from abroad will often need to use Japanese. Start by doing *Drill C* to get accustomed to the pattern. Don’t practice only the dialogue pattern, but try to expand the dialogue. And learn how to communicate suitably according to the situations by practicing the conversation.

4. Listen to the cassette tape repeatedly.
When practicing *Drill C* and *Conversation*, listen to the tape and say the dialogue aloud to make sure you acquire the correct pronunciation and intonation. Listening to the tape is the most effective way to get used to the sound and speed of Japanese and to improve your listening ability.

5. Always remember to review and prepare.
So as not to forget what you have learned in class, always review it the same day. Finally, do the questions at the end of each lesson in order to check what you have learnt and to test your listening comprehension. And, if you have time, look through the words and grammar explanation for the next lesson. Basic preparation is necessary for effective study.

6. Use what you have learnt.
Don’t limit your learning to the classroom. Try to talk to Japanese people. Using what you have just learnt is the best way to progress.

If you complete this textbook following the above suggestions, you will have acquired the basic vocabulary and expressions necessary for daily life in Japan.
CHARACTERS IN THE CONVERSATIONS

Mike Miller
American, employee of IMC

Sato Keiko
Japanese, employee of IMC

Jose Santos
Brazilian, employee of Brazil Air

Maria Santos
Brazilian, housewife

Karina
Indonesian, student at Fuji University

Wang Xue
Chinese, doctor at Kobe Hospital

Yamada Ichiro
Japanese, employee of IMC

Yamada Tomoko
Japanese, bank clerk
Matsumoto Tadashi
Japanese, department chief at IMC

Matsumoto Yoshiko
Japanese, housewife

Kimura Izumi
Japanese, announcer

--- Other Characters ---

Watt
British, professor at Sakura University

Schmidt
German, engineer at Power Electric Company

Lee
Korean, research worker at AKC

Teresa
Brazilian, schoolgirl (9 yrs.), daughter of Jose & Maria Santos

Taro
Japanese, schoolboy (8 yrs.), son of Ichiro & Tomoko Yamada.

Gupta
Indian, employee of IMC

Thawaphon
Thai, student at Japanese language school

※IMC (computer software company)
※AKC (アジア研究センター: Asia Research Institute)
CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION .................................................................................................................. 2
I. General Features of Japanese
II. Japanese Script
III. Pronunciation of Japanese

PRELIMINARY LESSON ................................................................................................. 8
I. Pronunciation
II. Classroom Instructions
III. Daily Greetings and Expressions
IV. Numerals

TERMS USED FOR INSTRUCTION .............................................................................. 10

ABBREVIATIONS ............................................................................................................. 11

LESSON 1 ......................................................................................................................... 12
I. Vocabulary
II. Translation
   Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences
   Conversation:
      How do you do?
III. Reference Words & Information:
   COUNTRY, PEOPLE & LANGUAGE
   1. N₁はN₂です
   2. N₁はN₂じゃありません
   3. Sか
   4. Nも
   5. N₁のN₂
   6. ～さん

IV. Grammar Explanation
   1. N₁はN₂です
   2. N₁はN₂じゃありません
   3. Sか
   4. Nも
   5. N₁のN₂
   6. ～さん

LESSON 2 ......................................................................................................................... 18
I. Vocabulary
II. Translation
   Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences
   Conversation:
      This is just a token
III. Reference Words & Information:
   FAMILY NAMES
   1. これ／それ／あれ
   2. このN／そのN／あのN
   3. そうです／そうじゃありません
   4. S₁か、S₂か
   5. N₁のN₂
   6. そうですか

IV. Grammar Explanation
   1. これ／それ／あれ
   2. このN／そのN／あのN
   3. そうです／そうじゃありません
   4. S₁か、S₂か
   5. N₁のN₂
   6. そうですか
LESSON 3

I. Vocabulary

II. Translation
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences
Conversation:
I'll take it

III. Reference Words & Information:
DEPARTMENT STORE

IV. Grammar Explanation
1. ここ／そこに／あそこに／こちら／
そこら／あこちら
2. N１は N２ (place)です
3. どこ／どちら
4. N１の N２
5. The こ／そ／あ／ど system of
demonstrative words
6. お国

LESSON 4

I. Vocabulary

II. Translation
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences
Conversation:
What are your opening hours?

III. Reference Words & Information:
PHONE & LETTER

IV. Grammar Explanation
1. 今 一時 分です
2. Vます
3. Vます／Vません／Vました／
Vませんでした
4. N (time) に V
5. N１から N２まで
6. N１と N２
7. Sね

LESSON 5

I. Vocabulary

II. Translation
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences
Conversation:
Does this train go to Koshien?

III. Reference Words & Information:
NATIONAL HOLIDAYS

IV. Grammar Explanation
1. N (place)へ 行きます／来ます／
帰ります
2. どこ[へ]も 行きません／
行きませんでした
3. N (vehicle)で 行きます／来ます／
帰ります
4. N (person/animal)と V
5. いつ
6. Sよ
LESSON 6

I. Vocabulary

II. Translation
   Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences
   Conversation:
   Won’t you join us?

III. Reference Words & Information:
   FOOD

IV. Grammar Explanation
   1. N を V (transitive)
   2. N を します
   3. 何を しますか
   4. なん and なに
   5. N (place) で V
   6. V ませんか
   7. V ましょう
   8. お～

LESSON 7

I. Vocabulary

II. Translation
   Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences
   Conversation:
   Hello

III. Reference Words & Information:
   FAMILY

IV. Grammar Explanation
   1. N (tool/means) で V
   2. “Word/Sentence” は ～語で
   3. N (person) に あげます, etc.
   4. N (person) に もらいます, etc.
   5. もう V ました

LESSON 8

I. Vocabulary

II. Translation
   Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences
   Conversation:
   It’s almost time to leave

III. Reference Words & Information:
   COLOR & TASTE

IV. Grammar Explanation
   1. Adjectives
   2. N は な-adj [な] です
      い-adj (～い) です
   3. な-adj な N
      い-adj (～い) N
   4. とても/あまり
   5. N は どうですか
   6. N1 は どんな N2 ですか
   7. S1 が、S2
   8. どれ
LESSON 9
I. Vocabulary
II. Translation
   Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences
   Conversation:
   That's too bad
III. Reference Words & Information:
     MUSIC, SPORTS & MOVIES

IV. Grammar Explanation
   1. そうですね／ええですね
   2. どなた N
   3. よく／だいたい／たくさん／少し／あまり／全然
   4. S1から、S2
   5. どうして

LESSON 10
I. Vocabulary
II. Translation
   Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences
   Conversation:
   Do you have chili sauce in this store?
III. Reference Words & Information:
     INSIDE THE HOUSE

IV. Grammar Explanation
   1. põe'リがあります／います
   2. N1(place)に N2が あります／います
   3. N1 は N2(place)に あります／います
   4. N1 (thing/person/place)の N2 (position)
   5. N1 や N2
   6. Word (s) ですか
   7. チリソースは ありませんか

LESSON 11
I. Vocabulary
II. Translation
   Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences
   Conversation:
   Please send this by sea mail
III. Reference Words & Information:
     MENU

IV. Grammar Explanation
   1. Saying numbers
   2. Quantifier (period) に ー 回 V
   3. Quantifier だけ／Nだけ

LESSON 12
I. Vocabulary
II. Translation
   Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences
   Conversation:
   How was the Festival?
III. Reference Words & Information:
     FESTIVALS & PLACES OF NOTE

IV. Grammar Explanation
   1. Past tense of noun sentences and
      な-adjective sentences
   2. Past tense of い-adjective sentences
   3. N1 は N2より adjective です
   4. N1 と N2 どちらが adjective ですか
      ･･･N1/N2 の ほうが adjective です
   5. N1 [の中] で 何／どこ／だれ／
      いつが いちばん adjective ですか
      ･･･N2が いちばん adjective です
LESSON 13

I. Vocabulary

II. Translation
   Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences
   Conversation:
   Charge us separately

III. Reference Words & Information:
   TOWN

IV. Grammar Explanation
   1. Nが 欲しいです
   2. Vます-form たいです
   3. N(place)〜Vます-form に
      行きます/来ます/帰ります
   4. Nに V/Nを V
   5. どこか/何か
   6. ご注文

LESSON 14

I. Vocabulary

II. Translation
   Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences
   Conversation:
   To Umeda, please

III. Reference Words & Information:
   STATION

IV. Grammar Explanation
   1. Verb conjugation
   2. Verb groups
   3. Verb て-form
   4. V て-form ください
   5. V て-form います
   6. Vます-formましょうか
   7. S1が、S2
   8. Nが V

LESSON 15

I. Vocabulary

II. Translation
   Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences
   Conversation:
   Tell me about your family

III. Reference Words & Information:
   OCCUPATIONS

IV. Grammar Explanation
   1. V て-formも いいです
   2. V て-formは いけません
   3. V て-form います
   4. V て-form います
   5. 知りません

LESSON 16

I. Vocabulary

II. Translation
   Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences
   Conversation:
   Tell me how to use this machine

III. Reference Words & Information:
   HOW TO WITHDRAW MONEY

IV. Grammar Explanation
   1. V て-form、[Vて-form]、〜
   2. い-adj (〜い) 〜くて、〜
   3. N
      な-adj [な] で、〜
   4. V1て-formから、V2
   5. Niは N2が adjective
   6. どうやって
   7. どの N
LESSON 17

I. Vocabulary

II. Translation

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

What seems to be the problem?

III. Reference Words & Information:

BODY & ILLNESS

IV. Grammar Explanation

1. Verb ない-form
2. Vない-formないで ください
3. Vない-formなければ なりません
4. Vない-formなくても いいです
5. N (object) は
6. N (time) までに V

LESSON 18

I. Vocabulary

II. Translation

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

What is your hobby?

III. Reference Words & Information:

ACTIONS

IV. Grammar Explanation

1. Verb dictionary form
2. N
t dictionary form ことが できます
3. わたしの 趣味は andscape of dictionary form です
4. V 1 dictionary form
   N の まえに、V 2
   Quantifier (period)
5. なかなか
6. ぜひ

LESSON 19

I. Vocabulary

II. Translation

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

As for my diet, I'll start it tomorrow

III. Reference Words & Information:

TRADITIONAL CULTURE & ENTERTAINMENT

IV. Grammar Explanation

1. Verb た-form
2. V た-form ことが あります
3. V た-formり、V た-formり します
4. い-adj (〜より) 〜く
   な-adj[な]〜に 〜ります
   Nに
5. そうですね

LESSON 20

I. Vocabulary

II. Translation

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

What will you do for the summer vacation?

III. Reference Words & Information:

HOW TO ADDRESS PEOPLE

IV. Grammar Explanation

1. Polite style and plain style
2. Proper use of the polite style or the plain style
3. Conversation in the plain style
LESSON 21

I. Vocabulary

II. Translation
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences
Conversation:
I think so, too

III. Reference Words & Information:
POSITIONS IN SOCIETY

IV. Grammar Explanation
1. plain form と 思います
2. "S" と 言います
plain form
3. V い-adj です
な-adj で しょう？
N 〜だ
4. N1 (place) で N2 があります
5. N (occasion) で
6. N で V
7. Vない-formないと……

LESSON 22

I. Vocabulary

II. Translation
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences
Conversation:
What kind of apartment would you like?

III. Reference Words & Information:
CLOTHES

IV. Grammar Explanation
1. Noun modification
2. Noun modification by sentences
3. Nが
4. V dictionary form 時間/約束/用事

LESSON 23

I. Vocabulary

II. Translation
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences
Conversation:
How can I get there?

III. Reference Words & Information:
ROAD & TRAFFIC

IV. Grammar Explanation
1. V dictionary form 〜ない-form
い-adj (〜い) とき、〜
な-adj
Nの
2. V dictionary form とき、〜
Vた-form
3. V dictionary form と、〜
4. Nが adjective/V
5. N (place)を V (verb of movement)
LESSON 24

I. Vocabulary

II. Translation
  Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences
  Conversation:
  Will you help me?

III. Reference Words & Information:
  EXCHANGE OF PRESENTS

IV. Grammar Explanation
  1. くれます
  2. あげます
     Vて-form もらいます
     くれます

LESSON 25

I. Vocabulary

II. Translation
  Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences
  Conversation:
  Thank you for having been kind to me

III. Reference Words & Information:
  LIFE

IV. Grammar Explanation
  1. plain past form ら、～
  2. Vた-form ら、～
  3. Vて-form
     い−adj (〜ば) 〜くて も、～
     な−adj [な]→で
     Nで
  4. もし and いくら
  5. Nが

SUMMARY LESSON

I. Particles
II. How to Use the Forms
III. Adverbs and Adverbial Expressions
IV. Various Conjunctions

APPENDICES

I. Numerals
II. Expressions of time
III. Expressions of period
IV. Counters
V. Conjugation of verbs
INTRODUCTION

I. General Features of Japanese

1. Parts of Speech
   The Japanese language is comprised of verbs, adjectives, nouns, adverbs, conjunctions and particles.

2. Word Order
   A predicate always comes at the end of a sentence. A modifier always comes before the word or phrase to be modified.

3. Predicate
   There are three types of predicates in Japanese: noun, verb and adjective. A predicate inflects according to whether it is (1) affirmative or negative and (2) non-past or past.
   Adjectives are divided into two types according to their type of inflection. They are called イ-adjectives and ネ-adjectives.
   In Japanese, words do not inflect for person, gender or number.

4. Particle
   A particle is used to show the grammatical relation between words, to show the speaker’s intention or to connect sentences.

5. Omission
   Words or phrases are often omitted if they are understood from the context. Even the subject and object of a sentence are often omitted.

II. Japanese Script

There are three kinds of letters in Japanese: hiragana, katakana and kanji (Chinese characters). Hiragana and katakana are phonetic representations of sounds, and each letter basically corresponds to one mora (a unit of sound. See Ⅲ). Kanji convey meanings as well as sounds.

In Japanese script, all three types of letters are used together. Katakana are used to write foreign names and loan words. 1945 kanji letters are fixed as essential for daily use. Hiragana are used to write particles, the inflectable parts of words, etc. Other than these three types of letters, romaji (Roman letters) are sometimes used for the convenience of foreigners. You may see romaji at stations and on signboards. Below are examples of all four types of script.

Mr. Tanaka is going to the department store with Mr. Miller.

田中 さん は ミラー さん と デパート へ 行 きます。

大阪 O s a k a

(○-kanji △-hiragana △-katakana ☆-romaji)
III. Pronunciation of Japanese
1. Kana and Mora

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>あ-row</th>
<th>あ a</th>
<th>い-row</th>
<th>い i</th>
<th>う-row</th>
<th>う u</th>
<th>え-row</th>
<th>え e</th>
<th>お-row</th>
<th>お o</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>か-row</td>
<td>か ka</td>
<td>さ-row</td>
<td>さ sa</td>
<td>た-row</td>
<td>た ta</td>
<td>な-row n</td>
<td>な na</td>
<td>は-row</td>
<td>は ha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>か-row</td>
<td>か ka</td>
<td>さ-row</td>
<td>さ sa</td>
<td>た-row</td>
<td>た ta</td>
<td>な-row</td>
<td>n na</td>
<td>は-row</td>
<td>は ha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>が-row</td>
<td>が ga</td>
<td>ざ-row</td>
<td>ざ za</td>
<td>だ-row</td>
<td>だ da</td>
<td>ば-row</td>
<td>ば ba</td>
<td>ぱ-row</td>
<td>ぱ pa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>き-row</td>
<td>き ki</td>
<td>じ-row</td>
<td>じ ji</td>
<td>じ-row</td>
<td>じ ji</td>
<td>び-row</td>
<td>び bi</td>
<td>び-row</td>
<td>び bi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>く-row</td>
<td>く ku</td>
<td>ず-row</td>
<td>ず zu</td>
<td>で-row</td>
<td>で de</td>
<td>ぶ-row</td>
<td>ぶ bu</td>
<td>ぶ-row</td>
<td>ぶ bu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>け-row</td>
<td>け ke</td>
<td>ぜ-row</td>
<td>ぜ ze</td>
<td>で-row</td>
<td>で de</td>
<td>べ-row</td>
<td>べ be</td>
<td>べ-row</td>
<td>べ be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>こ-row</td>
<td>こ ko</td>
<td>そ-row</td>
<td>そ so</td>
<td>と-row</td>
<td>と to</td>
<td>の-row</td>
<td>の no</td>
<td>は-row</td>
<td>は ha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ひ-row</td>
<td>ひ hi</td>
<td>ふ-row</td>
<td>ふ fu</td>
<td>へ-row</td>
<td>へ he</td>
<td>ほ-row ho</td>
<td>ほ ho</td>
<td>ひ-row</td>
<td>ひ hi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ひ-row</td>
<td>ひ hi</td>
<td>ふ-row</td>
<td>ふ fu</td>
<td>へ-row</td>
<td>へ he</td>
<td>ほ-row</td>
<td>ho ho</td>
<td>ひ-row</td>
<td>ひ hi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ゆ-row</td>
<td>ゆ yu</td>
<td>ゑ-row</td>
<td>ゑ e</td>
<td>ろ-row ro</td>
<td>ろ ro</td>
<td>や-row y</td>
<td>や ya</td>
<td>ら-row r</td>
<td>ら ra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ゆ-row</td>
<td>ゆ yu</td>
<td>ゑ-row</td>
<td>ゑ e</td>
<td>ろ-row</td>
<td>ro ro</td>
<td>や-row</td>
<td>ya ya</td>
<td>ら-row</td>
<td>ra ra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ゆ-row</td>
<td>ゆ yu</td>
<td>ゑ-row</td>
<td>ゑ e</td>
<td>ろ-row</td>
<td>ro ro</td>
<td>や-row</td>
<td>ya ya</td>
<td>ら-row</td>
<td>ra ra</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The katakana letters in the square on the right are not in the above table. They are used to write sounds which are not original Japanese sounds but are needed for use in loan words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ウィ wi</th>
<th>ウェ we</th>
<th>ウォ wo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>サ tsa</td>
<td>シュ she</td>
<td>ショ sho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ファ fa</td>
<td>フィ fi</td>
<td>フェ fe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ディ di</td>
<td>ドゥ du</td>
<td>デュ dyu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Japanese language is based on five vowel sounds: あ (a), い (i), う (u), え (e) and お (o) (see the table on the previous page). All spoken sounds are derived from these five vowels. They are used alone or are attached to either a consonant (e.g., く + あ = きあ) or a consonant plus the semi-vowel “y” (e.g., く +  Yas = きや). The exception to this is a special mora, ん (n), which is not followed by vowels. All of these sounds are of equal length when spoken.

[Note 1] A mora is a unit of sound in Japanese.

[Note 2] In order to write the Japanese language according to the pronunciation, kana are used. (See “Kana and Mora” on the previous page.) One kana letter or one kana letter accompanied by a small kana letter (e.g., きゃ) basically corresponds to one mora.

2. Long Vowels

A long vowel is pronounced twice as long as the ordinary vowels あ, い, う, え and お. If you count the length of the vowel あ as one, the length of the long vowel ああ is counted as two. This means あ is one mora long, whereas ああ is two moras long.

Whether a vowel is long or not can change the meaning of the word.

- e.g., おばさん (aunt): おばあさん (grandmother)
  おじさん (uncle): おじいさん (grandfather)
  ゆき (snow): ゆうき (courage)
  え (picture): わえ (yes) とる (take): とおる (pass)
  ここ (here): こここう (high school) へや (room): へいや (plain)
  カード (card) タクシー (taxi) スーパー (supermarket)
  テープ (tape) ノート (notebook)

[Note]

1) How to write the long vowels in hiragana

(1) The long vowels of the あ-line
   Add あ to the hiragana letters belonging to the あ-line.

(2) The long vowels of the い-line
   Add い to the hiragana letters belonging to the い-line.

(3) The long vowels of the う-line
   Add う to the hiragana letters belonging to the う-line.

(4) The long vowels of the え-line
   Add え to the hiragana letters belonging to the え-line.
   (exceptions: ええ yes, ねえ say, おねえさん elder sister)

(5) The long vowels of the お-line
   Add お to the hiragana letters belonging to the お-line.
   (exceptions: おおきい big, おおい many, とおい far, and some others)
2) How to write the long vowels in katakana
   For all the lines, add “ー.”

3. Pronunciation of ん
   ん never appears at the beginning of a word. It constitutes one mora. For easier pronunciation, the way it is said changes according to the sound that comes after it.

   1) It is pronounced /n/ before the sounds in the た-, だ-, ら- and な-rows.
      e.g., はんたい (opposite) うんどう (sport) せんろ (rail) みんな (all)

   2) It is pronounced /m/ before the sounds in the ぱ-, ぱ- and ま-rows.
      e.g., しんぶん (newspaper) えんぴつ (pencil) うんめい (destiny)

   3) It is pronounced /l/ before the sounds in the か- and が-rows.
      e.g., てんき (weather) けんがく (visit)

4. Pronunciation of つ
   つ appears before a sound belonging to either the か-, さ-, た- or ぱ-row. In writing loan words, it is also used before sounds belonging to the ザ-row, ダ-row, etc. It constitutes one mora and has one mora's length.

   e.g., ぶか (subordinate) : ぶっか (commodity price)
   かさい (fire) : かっさい (applause)
   おと (sound) : おっと (husband)
   にっこ (diary) ざっし (magazine) きって (stamp)
   いっぱい (a cup of ~) コップ (glass) ベッド (bed)

5. Pronunciation of Letters Combined with や, ゆ or よ
   き, ぎ, し, じ, に, ひ, び, ぴ, み or り can combine with や, ゆ or よ, and the two letters together constitute one mora.

   e.g., ひゃく (jump) : ひゃく (hundred)
   じゅう (freedom) : じゅう (ten)
   びょういん (beauty parlor) : びょういん (hospital)
   シャツ (shirt) おちゃ (tea) ぎゅうにゅう (milk)
   きょう (today) ぶちょう (department chief) りょこう (travel)

6. Pronunciation of the が-row
   The consonant of this row, when it comes at the beginning of a word, is pronounced [g]. In other cases, it is usually pronounced [ŋ]. Recently some Japanese do not differentiate between [g] and [ŋ], and always use [g].
7. Devoicing of Vowels [i] and [u]

The vowels [i] and [u] are devoiced and not heard when they come between voiceless consonants. The vowel [u] of す[su] in 〜です or 〜ます is also devoiced when the sentence finishes with either 〜です or 〜ます.

  e.g., すき (like) したいです (want to do) ききます (listen)

8. Accent

The Japanese language has pitch accent. That is, some moras in a word are pronounced high and others low. The words are divided into two types according to whether a word has a falling pitch or not. Words with a falling pitch are subdivided into three types according to where the fall in pitch occurs. The standard Japanese accent is characterized by the fact that the first and the second moras have different pitches, and that the pitch never rises again once it has fallen.

[Types of Accent]

1) A fall in pitch does not occur.
   e.g., にわ (garden) はな (nose) のまえ (name) にほんご (Japanese language)

2) A fall in pitch comes after the first mora.
   e.g., ほん (book) にんき (weather) りげつ (next month)

3) A fall in pitch comes in the word at some place after the second mora.
   e.g., たまご (egg) ニコ (airplane) せんせい (teacher)

4) A fall in pitch comes after the last mora.
   e.g., くつ (shoes) はな (flower) やすみ (holiday) おとうと (younger brother)

   "はな (nose)" in 1) and "はな (flower)" in 4) are alike, but the type of accent is different, because if a particle like か is added after each word 1) is pronounced はなか, whereas 4) is pronounced はなが. The following are some other examples of words whose meaning differ according to the type of accent.

   e.g., はし (bridge): ばし (chopsticks) いち (one): いち (location)

There are local differences in accent. For example, the accent of the area around Osaka is quite different from the standard one. The following are examples.

   e.g., Tokyo accent: Osaka accent
   (standard Japanese accent)
   はな: ばな (flower)
   いちご: いちご (apple)
   おんがく: おんがく (music)
9. Intonation

There are three patterns. They are 1) flat, 2) rising and 3) falling. Questions are pronounced with a rising intonation. Other sentences are usually pronounced flat, but sometimes with a falling intonation. A falling intonation can express feelings such as agreement or disappointment, etc.

e.g., 佐藤: あした 友達と お花見 を します。【→ flat】
      ミラーさんも いっしょに 行きませんか。【↑ rising】
      ミラー: ああ、いいですね。【↓ falling】

Sato: I'll go to see the cherry blossoms with my friends tomorrow.

         Won't you come with us, Mr. Miller?

Miller: Oh, that sounds good.
PRELIMINARY LESSON

1. Pronunciation

1. Kana and Mora

2. Long Vowels
   おばさん (aunt) : おばあさん (grandmother)
   おじさん (uncle) : おじいさん (grandfather)
   ゆき (snow) : ゆうき (courage)
   え (picture) : ええ (yes)
   とる (take) : とおる (pass)
   ここ (here): こうこう (high school) へや (room): へいや (plain)
   カード (card) タクシー (taxi) スーパー (supermarket)
   テープ (tape) ノート (notebook)

3. Pronunciation of ん
   えんぴつ (pencil) みんな (all) てんき (weather) さんえん (no smoking)

4. Pronunciation of っ
   ぶか (subordinate): ぶっか (commodity price)
   かさい (fire): かっさい (applause)
   おと (sound): おっと (husband)
   にっき (diary) ぎっし (magazine) きって (stamp)
   いちばい (a cup of ~) コップ (glass) ベッド (bed)

5. Pronunciation of Letters Combined with や, ゆ or よ
   ひゃく (jump): ひゃく (hundred)
   じゅう (freedom): じゅう (ten)
   びょういん (beauty parlor): びょういん (hospital)
   シャツ (shirt) おちゃ (tea) ぎゅにゅう (milk)
   きょう (today) ぶちょう (department chief) りょこう (travel)

6. Accent
   にわ (garden) なまえ (name) にほんご (Japanese language)
   ほん (book) でんき (weather) にげつ (next month)
   たまご (egg) ひこうき (airplane) せんせい (teacher)
   くつ (shoes) やすみ (holiday) おとうと (younger brother)
   はし (bridge): はし (chopsticks) いち (one): いち (location)

   Tokyo accent : Osaka accent
   はな : はな (flower)
   りんご : りんご (apple)
   おんがく : おんがく (music)
7. Intonation

E.g., 佐藤 : あした友達とお花見をします。【→】
        ミラーさんも いっしょに 行きませんか。【←】
        ミラー : ああ、いいですねえ。 【←】
Sato    : I'll go to see the cherry blossoms with my friends tomorrow.
        Won't you come with us, Mr. Miller?
        Miller : Oh, that sounds good.

II. Classroom Instructions
1. Let's begin.
2. Let's finish (the lesson).
3. Let's take a break.
4. Do you understand? (Yes, I do./No, I don't.)
5. Once more.
6. Fine. / Good.
7. That's not OK. / That's wrong.
8. name
9. exam, homework
10. question, answer, example

III. Daily Greetings and Expressions
1. Good morning.
2. Good afternoon.
3. Good evening.
4. Good night.
5. Good-bye.
6. Thank you very much.
7. Excuse me. / I'm sorry.
8. Please.

IV. Numerals
0    zero
1    one
2    two
3    three
4    four
5    five
6    six
7    seven
8    eight
9    nine
10   ten
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>第一課</td>
<td>lesson –</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>文型</td>
<td>sentence pattern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>例文</td>
<td>example sentence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>会話</td>
<td>conversation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>練習</td>
<td>practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>問題</td>
<td>exercise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>答え</td>
<td>answer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>読み物</td>
<td>reading practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>復習</td>
<td>review</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>目次</td>
<td>contents</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>索引</td>
<td>index</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>文法</td>
<td>grammar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>文</td>
<td>sentence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>単語（語）</td>
<td>word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>句</td>
<td>phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>節</td>
<td>clause</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>発音</td>
<td>pronunciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>母音</td>
<td>vowel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>子音</td>
<td>consonant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>拍</td>
<td>mora</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>アクセント</td>
<td>accent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>イントネーション</td>
<td>intonation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[か]行</td>
<td>[ka] row</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[い]列</td>
<td>[i] line</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>丁寧体</td>
<td>polite style of speech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>普通体</td>
<td>plain style of speech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>活用</td>
<td>inflection</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>フォーマー</td>
<td>form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>〜形</td>
<td>~form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>修飾</td>
<td>modification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>例外</td>
<td>exception</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ABBREVIATIONS

N noun (名詞)
e.g. がくせい つくえ
      student  desk

い-adj い-adjective (い形容詞)
e.g. おいしい たかい
      tasty    high

な-adj な-adjective (な形容詞)
e.g. きれい[な] しずか[な]
      beautiful quiet

V verb (動詞)
e.g. かきます たべます
      write    eat

S sentence (文)
e.g. これは 本です。
      This is a book.

わたしなあした東京へ行きます。
      I will go to Tokyo tomorrow.
# Lesson 1

## I. Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>わたし</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>わたしたち</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あなた</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あなたのひと</td>
<td>that person, he, she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>（あのかた）</td>
<td>（あの方）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>みなさん</td>
<td>ladies and gentlemen, all of you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>～さん</td>
<td>Mr., Ms. (title of respect added to a name)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>～ちゃん</td>
<td>(suffix often added to a child's name instead of ～さん)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>～くん</td>
<td>(suffix often added to a boy's name)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>～じん</td>
<td>(suffix meaning &quot;a national of&quot;; e.g., アメリカじん, an American)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>せんせい</td>
<td>teacher, instructor (not used when referring to one's own job)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>きょうし</td>
<td>teacher, instructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>がくせい</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かいしゃいん</td>
<td>company employee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>しゃいん</td>
<td>employee of ～Company (used with a company's name; e.g., IMCのしゃいん)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ざんこういん</td>
<td>bank employee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>いしゃ</td>
<td>medical doctor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>けんきゅうしゃ</td>
<td>researcher, scholar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>エンジニア</td>
<td>engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>だいがく</td>
<td>university</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>びょういん</td>
<td>hospital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>でんき</td>
<td>electricity, light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>だれ（どなた）</td>
<td>who （どなた is the polite equivalent of だれ）</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
- さい — 年老
- 岁 何歳
(おいくつ) — years old
how old (おいくつ is the polite equivalent of なんさい)

はい
いいえ

しつれいですか 失礼ですか
お名前は？ お名前は？
はじめまして 初めまして。

どうぞ よろしく [おねがいします]。Pleased to meet you. (lit. Please be nice
douzō yoroshiku [ōnegai shimasu] to me. Usually used at the end of a
self-introduction.)

こちらは さんです。
から きました。
から 来ました。

American
イギリス U.K.
インド India
インドネシア Indonesia
韓国 South Korea
タイ Thailand
中国 China
ドイツ Germany
日本 Japan
フランス France
ブラジル Brazil
さくら大学/富士大学 fictitious universities
IMC/パワーエネルギー/ブラジルエアー
fictitious companies

AKC fictitious institute
神戸病院 fictitious hospital
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns
1. I am Mike Miller.
2. Mr. Santos is not a student.
3. Is Mr. Miller a company employee?
4. Mr. Santos is also a company employee.

Example Sentences
1. Are you Mr. Mike Miller?
   • Yes, I am Mike Miller.
2. Are you a student, Mr. Miller?
   • No, I am not a student.
   I am a company employee.
3. Is Mr. Wang an engineer?
   • No, Mr. Wang is not an engineer.
   He is a doctor.
4. Who is that person?
   • He is Professor Watt. He is a teacher at Sakura University.
5. How old is Teresa?
   • She is nine years old.

Conversation

How do you do?

Sato: Good morning.
Yamada: Good morning.
Ms. Sato, this is Mr. Mike Miller.

Miller: How do you do? I am Mike Miller.
I am from the United States of America.
Nice to meet you.

Sato: I am Sato Keiko.
Nice to meet you.
### III. Reference Words & Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>国</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>人</th>
<th>People</th>
<th>ことば</th>
<th>Language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>アメリカ (U.S.A.)</td>
<td>アメリカ人</td>
<td>英語 (English)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>イギリス (U.K.)</td>
<td>イギリス人</td>
<td>英語 (English)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>イタリア (Italy)</td>
<td>イタリア人</td>
<td>イタリア語 (Italian)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>イラン (Iran)</td>
<td>イラン人</td>
<td>ペルシア語 (Persian)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>インド (India)</td>
<td>インド人</td>
<td>ヒンディー語 (Hindi)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>インドネシア (Indonesia)</td>
<td>インドネシア人</td>
<td>インドネシア語 (Indonesian)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>エジプト (Egypt)</td>
<td>エジプト人</td>
<td>アラビア語 (Arabic)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>オーストラリア (Australia)</td>
<td>オーストラリア人</td>
<td>英語 (English)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>カナダ (Canada)</td>
<td>カナダ人</td>
<td>英語 (English)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>韓国 (South Korea)</td>
<td>韓国人</td>
<td>韓国語 (Korean)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>サウジアラビア (Saudi Arabia)</td>
<td>サウジアラビア人</td>
<td>アラビア語 (Arabic)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>シンガポール (Singapore)</td>
<td>シンガポール人</td>
<td>英語 (English)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>スペイン (Spain)</td>
<td>スペイン人</td>
<td>スペイン語 (Spanish)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>タイ (Thailand)</td>
<td>タイ人</td>
<td>タイ語 (Thai)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>中国 (China)</td>
<td>中国人</td>
<td>中国語 (Chinese)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ドイツ (Germany)</td>
<td>ドイツ人</td>
<td>ドイツ語 (German)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>日本 (Japan)</td>
<td>日本人</td>
<td>日本語 (Japanese)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>フランス (France)</td>
<td>フランス人</td>
<td>フランス語 (French)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>フィリピン (Philippines)</td>
<td>フィリピン人</td>
<td>フィリピン語 (Filipino)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ブラジル (Brazil)</td>
<td>ブラジル人</td>
<td>ポルトガル語 (Portuguese)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ベトナム (Vietnam)</td>
<td>ベトナム人</td>
<td>ベトナム語 (Vietnamese)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>マレーシア (Malaysia)</td>
<td>マレーシア人</td>
<td>マレーシア語 (Malaysian)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>メキシコ (Mexico)</td>
<td>メキシコ人</td>
<td>スペイン語 (Spanish)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ロシア (Russia)</td>
<td>ロシア人</td>
<td>ロシア語 (Russian)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. \textbf{N}_1 \text{は} \text{N}_2 \text{です}

1) Particle \text{は}
The particle \text{は} indicates that the word before it is the topic of the sentence. You select a noun you want to talk about, add \text{は} to show that it is the topic and give a statement about the topic.

① わたしは マイク・ミラーです。 I am Mike Miller.

[Note] The particle \text{は} is read \text{わ}.

2) \text{です}
Nouns used with \text{です} work as predicates. \text{です} indicates judgement or assertion. \text{です} also conveys that the speaker is being polite towards the listener. \text{です} inflects when the sentence is negative (see 2. below) or in the past tense (see Lesson 12).

② わたしは エンジニアです。 I am an engineer.

2. \textbf{N}_1 \text{は} \text{N}_2 \text{じゃ} \text{ありません}

じゃ \text{ありません} is the negative form of \text{です}. It is the form used in daily conversation. For a formal speech or writing, \text{では} \text{ありません} is used instead.

③ サントスさんは 学生じゃ ありません。 Mr. Santos is not a student.

[Note] \text{は} in \text{では} is read \text{わ}.

3. \textbf{S\text{か}}

1) Particle \text{か}
The particle \text{か} is used to express the speaker’s doubt, question, uncertainty, etc. A question is formed by simply adding \text{か} to the end of the sentence. A question ends with a rising intonation.

2) Questions asking whether a statement is correct or not
As mentioned above, a sentence becomes a question when \text{か} is added to the end. The word order does not change. The question thus made asks whether a statement is correct or not. Depending on whether you agree with the statement or not, your answer to such a question begins with \text{は}い or \text{いいえ}.

④ ミラーさんは アメリカ人ですか。 Is Mr. Miller an American?
・・・はい、アメリカ人です。 ・・・Yes, he is.

⑤ ミラーさんは 先生ですか。 Is Mr. Miller a teacher?
・・・いいえ、先生じゃ ありません。 ・・・No, he is not.

3) Questions with interrogatives
An interrogative replaces the part of the sentence that covers what you want to ask about. The word order does not change, and \text{か} is added at the end.

⑥ あの \text{方}は どなたですか。 Who is that man?
・・・[あの \text{方}は] ミラーさんです。 ・・・That’s Mr. Miller.
4. **Nも**

も is added after a topic instead of は when the statement about the topic is the same as the previous topic.

⑦ ミラーさんは 会社員です。 Mr. Miller is a company employee.

グプタさんも 会社員です。 Mr. Gupta is also a company employee.

5. **N₁ の N₂**

の is used to connect two nouns. N₁ modifies N₂. In Lesson 1, N₁ is an organization or some kind of group to which N₂ belongs.

⑧ ミラーさんは IMC の 社員です。 Mr. Miller is an IMC employee.

6. **〜さん**

さん is added to the name of the listener or a third person to show the speaker’s respect to the person. It should never be used with the speaker’s own name.

⑨ あの 方は ミラーさんです。 That’s Mr. Miller.

When referring directly to the listener, the word あなた (you) is not commonly used if you know the listener’s name. The listener’s family name followed by さん is usually used.

⑩ 鈴木： ミラーさんは 学生ですか

ミラー： いいえ、会社員です。

Suzuki： Are you a student?

Miller： No, I’m a company employee.
Lesson 2

I. Vocabulary

これ
それ
あれ

この～
その～
あの～

this (thing here)
that (thing near you)
that (thing over there)

this～, this～ here
that～, that～ near you
that～, that～ over there

ほん
じしょ
ざっし
しんぶん
ノート
てちょう
めいし
カード
テレホンカード

book
dictionary
magazine
newspaper
notebook
pocket notebook
business card
card
telephone card

えんぴつ
ボールペン
シャープペンシル

pencil
ballpoint pen
mechanical pencil, propelling pencil

かぎ
とけい
かさ
かばん

key
watch, clock
umbrella
bag, briefcase

[カセット]テープ
テープレコーダー
テレビ
ラジオ
カメラ
コンピューター
じどうしゃ

[cassette] tape
tape recorder
television
radio
camera
computer
automobile, car
つくえ 机
desk
椅子
chair

チョコレート
chocolate
coffee
コーヒー

えいご 英語
the English language
にほんご 日本語
the Japanese language
～ご ～語
～ language

なん 何
what

そう
so

ちがいます。 違います。
No, it isn’t./You are wrong.
そうですか。
I see./Is that so?
あのう
well (used to show hesitation)
ぼんの きもちです。
It’s nothing./It’s a token of my gratitude.
ぼんの 気持ちです。
どうぞ。

どうも。
どうも ありがとう [ございます]. Thank you [very much].

＜会話＞
これから お世話になります。
I hope for your kind assistance hereafter.
こちらこそ よろしく。
I am pleased to meet you. (response to どうぞ よろしく)
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns

1. This is a dictionary.
2. This is a book on computers.
3. That is my umbrella.
4. This umbrella is mine.

Example Sentences

1. Is this a telephone card?
   …Yes, it is.
2. Is that a notebook?
   …No, it’s not. It’s a pocket notebook.
3. What is that?
   …This is a business card.
4. Is this a “9” or a “7”?
   …It’s a “9.”
5. What is that magazine about?
   …It’s a magazine on cars.
6. Whose bag is that?
   …It’s Ms. Sato’s bag.
7. Is this umbrella yours?
   …No, it’s not mine.
8. Whose is this key?
   …It’s mine.

Conversation

This is just a token

Yamada: Yes. Who is it?
Santos: I am Santos from (apartment) 408.

----------------------------------------

Santos: Hello. I am Santos.
How do you do?
It is nice to meet you.
Yamada: The pleasure’s mine.
Santos: Er, this is a little something...
Yamada: Oh, thank you. What is it?
Santos: It’s coffee. Please.
Yamada: Thank you very much.
### III. Reference Words & Information

#### 名前   FAMILY NAMES

Most Common Family Names

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>佐藤</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>鈴木</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>高橋</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>田中</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>渡辺</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>伊藤</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>中村</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>山本</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>小林</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>菅藤</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>加藤</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>吉田</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>山田</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>佐々木</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>松本</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>山口</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>木村</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>井上</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>阿部</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>林</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Greetings

ترتيب ل 笑顔

> When people meet for the first time on business, business cards are exchanged.

When you move house, it is polite to introduce yourself to your new neighbours and give them a small gift, such as a towel, soap or sweets.
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. これ／それ／あれ

これら, それ and あれ are demonstratives.
They work as nouns. これ refers to a thing near the speaker. それ refers to a thing near the listener. あれ refers to a thing far from the speaker and the listener.

① それは辞書ですか。 Is that a dictionary?
② これをください。 I’ll take this. (lit. Please give this to me.)(L. 3)

2. この N ／その N ／あの N

この, その and あの modify nouns. “この N” refers to a thing or a person near the speaker. “その N” refers to a thing or a person near the listener. “あの N” refers to a thing or a person far from both the speaker and the listener.

③ この本はわたしのです。 This book is mine.
④ あの方はどなたですか。 Who is that [person]?

3. そうです／そうじゃありません

In the case of a noun sentence, the word そう is often used to answer a question requiring an affirmative or negative answer. はい, そうです is the affirmative answer and いいえ, そうじゃ ありません is the negative answer.

⑤ それはテレホンカードですか。 Is that a telephone card?
　…はい, そうです。 …Yes, it is. (lit. Yes, it’s so.)

⑥ それはテレホンカードですか。 Is that a telephone card?
　…いいえ, そうじゃ ありません。 …No, it isn’t. (lit. No, it’s not so.)

The verb ちがいます (lit. to differ) can be used to mean そうじゃ ありません.

⑦ それはテレホンカードですか。 Is that a telephone card?
　…いいえ, 違います。 …No, it isn’t.
4.  S₁か、S₂か

This is a question asking the listener to choose between alternatives, S₁ and S₂, for the answer. As an answer to this type of question, the chosen sentence is stated. Neither はい nor いいえ is used.

⑧ これは「9」ですか、「7」ですか。 Is this a "9" or a "7"?
…「9」です。 …It's a "9".

5.  N₁の N₂

You learned in Lesson 1 that の is used to connect two nouns when N₁ modifies N₂. In Lesson 2 you learn two other uses of this の.

1) N₁ explains what N₂ is about.

⑨ これは コンピューターの 本です。 This is a book on computers.

2) N₁ explains who owns N₂.

⑩ これは わたしの 本です。 This is my book.

N₂ is sometimes omitted when it is obvious. When N₂ means a person, however, you cannot omit it.

⑪ あれは だれの かばんですか。 Whose bag is that?
…佐藤さんののです。 …It’s Ms. Sato’s.

⑫ この かばんは あなたののですか。 Is this bag yours?
…いいえ、わたしのじゃないありません。 …No, it’s not mine.

⑬ ミラーさんは I M Cの 社員ですか。 Is Mr. Miller an employee of IMC?
…はい、I M Cの 社員です。 …Yes, he is.

6.  そうですか

This expression is used when the speaker receives new information and shows that he or she understands it.

⑭ この 傘は あなたののですか。
…いいえ、違います。シュミットさんののです。
そうですか。
Is this umbrella yours?
…No, it’s Mr. Schmidt’s.
I see.
# Lesson 3

## I. Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ここ</td>
<td>here, this place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>そこの</td>
<td>there, that place near you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あそこ</td>
<td>that place over there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>どここ</td>
<td>where, what place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>こちら</td>
<td>this way, this place (polite equivalent of ここ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>その後</td>
<td>that way, that place near you (polite equivalent of そこの)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あちら</td>
<td>that way, that place over there (polite equivalent of あそこ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>どちら</td>
<td>which way, where (polite equivalent of どここ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>きょうしつ</td>
<td>classroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>しょくどう</td>
<td>dining hall, canteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>じむしょ</td>
<td>office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かいざしつ</td>
<td>conference room, assembly room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>うけつけ</td>
<td>reception desk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ロビー</td>
<td>lobby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>へや</td>
<td>room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>トイレ (おてあらい) (お手洗い)</td>
<td>toilet, rest room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かいだん</td>
<td>staircase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>エレベーター</td>
<td>elevator, lift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>エスカレーター</td>
<td>escalator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>［お］くに</td>
<td>country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かいしゃ</td>
<td>company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>うち</td>
<td>house, home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>でんわ</td>
<td>telephone, telephone call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>くつ</td>
<td>shoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ネクタイ</td>
<td>necktie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ワイン</td>
<td>wine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>たばこ</td>
<td>tobacco, cigarette</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>うりば</td>
<td>department, counter (in a department store)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
地下
-かい（-がい）-階
なんがい
何階
-えん
-円
いくら

ひゃく
百

せん
千

まん
万

Excuse me.
(-polite equivalent of です)

Please show me [〜].

well, then, in that case

Give me [〜], please.

新大阪
name of a station in Osaka

イタリア
Italy

スイス
Switzerland

MT／ヨーネン／アキックス
fictitious companies
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns

1. This is a dining hall.
2. The telephone is over there.

Example Sentences

1. Is this Shin-Osaka?
   •••Yes, it is.
2. Where is the rest room?
   •••It is over there.
3. Where is Mr. Yamada?
   •••He is in the office.
4. Where is the elevator?
   •••It is there.
5. Which country are you from?
   •••America.
6. Where are those shoes from?
   •••They’re Italian shoes.
7. How much is this watch?
   •••It’s 18,600 yen.

Conversation

I’ll take it

Maria: Excuse me. Where is the wine department?
Sales clerk A: It is in the first basement.
Maria: Thanks.

Maria: Excuse me. Could you show me that wine?
Sales clerk B: Certainly. Here you are.
Maria: Is this French wine?
Sales clerk B: No, it’s Italian.
Maria: How much is it?
Sales clerk B: 2,500 yen.
Maria: Well, I’ll take it.
### Reference Words & Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Floor</th>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B 2</td>
<td>駐車場</td>
<td>parking lot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>食料品</td>
<td>food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>靴・かばん・アクセサリー・化粧品</td>
<td>shoes·bags·accessories·cosmetics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>婦人服</td>
<td>ladies’ wear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>紳士服</td>
<td>men’s wear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>家具・食器・電気製品</td>
<td>furniture·kitchenware·electrical appliances</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>子ども服・おもちゃ・本・文房具</td>
<td>children’s clothes·toys·books·stationery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>スポーツ用品・旅行用品</td>
<td>sporting goods·leisure goods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>時計・眼鏡・カメラ</td>
<td>watches·glasses·cameras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>食堂・催し物会場</td>
<td>restaurants·event hall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>屋上</td>
<td>遊園地</td>
<td>amusement area</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Department Store

- **Department Store**

- **8th Floor:** Restaurants·Event Hall
- **7th Floor:** Watches·Glasses·Cameras
- **6th Floor:** Sporting Goods·Leisure Goods
- **5th Floor:** Children’s Clothes·Toys·Books·Stationery
- **4th Floor:** Furniture·Kitchenware·Electrical Appliances
- **3rd Floor:** Men’s Wear
- **2nd Floor:** Ladies’ Wear
- **1st Floor:** Shoes·Bags·Accessories·Cosmetics
- **Basement 1:** Food
- **Basement 2:** Parking Lot
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. ここ／そこ／あそこ／こちら／そちら／あちら

The demonstratives これ, それ and あれ that are discussed in Lesson 2 refer to a thing, while ここ, そこ and あそこ refer to a place. ここ is the place where the speaker is, そこで is the place where the listener is, and あそこ is the place far from both the speaker and the listener.

こちら, そちら and あちら are demonstrative words referring to direction. こちら, そちら and あちら are also used to refer to location, in which case, they are politer than ここ, そこで and あそこ.

[Note] When the speaker regards the listener as sharing his/her territory, the place where they both are is designated by the word ここ. Under this situation, そこで designates the place a little distant from the speaker and listener, and あそこ designates an even more distant location.

2. N1は N2(place)です

Using this sentence pattern, you can explain where a place, a thing or a person is.

① お手洗いは あそこです。 The rest room is there.
② 電話は 2階です。 The telephone is on the second floor.
③ 山田さんは 事務所です。 Mr. Yamada is in the office.

3. どこ／どちら

どこ means “where,” and どちら means “which direction.” どちら can also mean “where,” in which case it’s politer than どこ.

④ お手洗いは どこですか。 Where’s the rest room?
　…あそこです。 …It’s there.
⑤ エレベーターは どちらですか。 Where’s the elevator?
　…あちらです。 …It’s in that direction. (It’s there.)
どこ or どちら is also used to ask the name of a country, company, school or any place or organization a person belongs to. You cannot use なん (what). どちら is politer than どこ.

⑥ 学校は どこですか。 What’s the name of your school?
⑦ 会社は どちらですか。 What company do you work for?

4. \( N_1 \) の \( N_2 \)

When \( N_1 \) is the name of a country and \( N_2 \) is a product, it means that \( N_2 \) is made in that country. When \( N_1 \) is the name of a company and \( N_2 \) is a product, it means that \( N_2 \) is made by that company. In this structure, どこ is used to ask where or by whom \( N_2 \) is made.

⑧ これは どこの コンピューターですか。 Where is this computer made?/ Who is the maker of this computer?
･･･日本の コンピューターです。 ･･･It’s made in Japan.
･･･IMC is.

5. The こ／そ／あ／ど system of demonstrative words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>こ series</th>
<th>そ series</th>
<th>あ series</th>
<th>ど series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>thing</td>
<td>これ</td>
<td>それ</td>
<td>あれ</td>
<td>どれ (L. 8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thing</td>
<td>この N</td>
<td>その N</td>
<td>あの N</td>
<td>どの N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(L. 16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place</td>
<td>ここ</td>
<td>そこ</td>
<td>あそこ</td>
<td>どこ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>direction</td>
<td>こちら</td>
<td>そちら</td>
<td>あちら</td>
<td>どちら</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place (polite)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. お国

The prefix お is added to a word concerning the listener or a third person in order to express the speaker’s respect to the person.

⑨ [お] 国は どちらですか。 Where are you from?
Lesson 4

I. Vocabulary

おきます → get up, wake up
ねます → sleep, go to bed
はたらきます → work
tたきます → take a rest, take a holiday
休みます → study
おわります → finish
department store
ぎんこう → bank
ゆうびんきょく → post office
tしょかん → library
びじゅつかん → art museum
いま → now
ーじ → o’clock
ーぶん (→ ぶん) → minute
はん → half
なんじ → what time
なんぶん → what minute
gosenn → a.m., morning
gogo → p.m., afternoon
あさ → morning
ひる → daytime, noon
ばん (よる) → night, evening
おととい → the day before yesterday
きのう → yesterday
きょう → today
あした → tomorrow
あさって → the day after tomorrow
けさ → this morning
cこんばん → this evening, tonight
やすみ → rest, a holiday, a day off
ひるやすみ → lunchtime
毎朝  every morning
毎晩  every night
毎日  every day

月曜日  Monday
火曜日  Tuesday
水曜日  Wednesday
木曜日  Thursday
金曜日  Friday
土曜日  Saturday
日曜日  Sunday
什么日 of the week

番号  number
何番  what number

〜から  from 〜
〜まで  up to 〜, until 〜

〜と〜  and (used to connect nouns)

そちら  your place
たいへんですね。  That's tough, isn't it? (used when expressing sympathy)
大変ですね。  well, let me see

えーと

information, directory assistance
Please. (lit. ask for a favor)
Certainly (sir, madam)
the number being inquired about
Thank you very much.

ニューヨーク  New York
ペキン  Beijing (北京)
ロンドン  London
バンコク  Bangkok
ロサンゼルス  Los Angeles
やまと美術館  fictitious art museum
大阪デパート  fictitious department store
みどり図書館  fictitious library
アップル銀行  fictitious bank
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns

1. It is five past four now.
2. I work from nine to five.
3. I get up at six in the morning.
4. I studied yesterday.

Example Sentences

1. What time is it now?
   ⋅⋅⋅It is ten past two.
   What time is it now in New York?
   ⋅⋅⋅It is ten past twelve at night.
2. From what time to what time is the bank open?
   ⋅⋅⋅It is open from nine till three.
   On what day of the week is it closed?
   ⋅⋅⋅It is closed on Saturdays and Sundays.
3. What time do you go to bed every night?
   ⋅⋅⋅I go to bed at eleven o’clock.
4. Do you work on Saturdays?
   ⋅⋅⋅No, I don’t.
5. Did you study yesterday?
   ⋅⋅⋅No, I didn’t.
6. What is the telephone number of IMC?
   ⋅⋅⋅It is 341-2597.

Conversation

What are your opening hours?

104: Hello, this is Ishida of the 104 Service.
Karina: Could you tell me the phone number of the Yamato Art Museum, please?

Tape: The number you are inquiring about is 0797-38-5432.

Museum staff member: Hello, Yamato Art Museum.
Karina: Excuse me. What are your opening hours?
Staff: We are open from nine to four.
Karina: Which day of the week are you closed?
Staff: We are closed on Mondays.
Karina: Thank you very much.
III. Reference Words & Information

電話・手紙 PHONE & LETTER

How to Use a Public Phone

1. Lift the receiver.
2. Put coin or card into slot.
3. Press the numbers.
4. Hang up the receiver.
5. Take card or change if any.

Public phones accept only ¥10 coins, ¥100 coins, and telephone cards. If you put in a ¥100 coin, no change will be returned.
* If the machine has a start button, press it after ③.

Emergency Numbers and Others

110 警察署 police
119 消防署 fire/ambulance
117 時報 time
177 天気予報 weather forecast
104 電話番号案内 directory assistance services

How to Write an Address

district postal zip code city ward town

〒658-0063 兵庫県神戸市中央区三宮1-23
コウベハイツ405号
building name apartment number
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. 今 時 分です

To express time, the counter suffixes 時 (o’clock) and 分 (minutes) are used. The numbers are put before them. 分 is read ぶん after 2, 5, 7 or 9 and ぶん after 1, 3, 4, 6, 8 or 10. 1, 6, 8 and 10 are read いっ, ろっ, はっ and じゅっ (じっ) before ぶん. (See Appendices II.)

The interrogative なん is used with a counter suffix to ask questions concerning number or amounts. Therefore, the word なんじ (or sometimes なんぶん) is used to ask the time.

① 今 何時ですか。 What time is it now?
　…7時10分です。 …It’s seven ten.

[Note] は marks the topic of a sentence, which you learned in Lesson 1. A geographical location can also be used as the topic as can be seen in ②.

② ニューヨークは 今 何時ですか。 In New York what time is it now?
　…午前 4時です。 …It’s 4 a.m.

2. ます

1) A verb with ます works as a predicate.
2) ます makes a sentence polite.

③ わたしは 毎日 勉強します。 I study every day.

3. ます／ません／ました／ませんでした

1) ます is used when a sentence expresses a habitual thing or a truth. It is also used when a sentence expresses a thing that will occur in the future. The negative form and the forms in the past tense are shown in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>non-past (future/present)</th>
<th>past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>affirmative</td>
<td>(おき)ます</td>
<td>(おき)ました</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negative</td>
<td>(おき)ません</td>
<td>(おき)ませんでした</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

④ 毎朝 6時に 起きます。 I get up at six every morning.
⑤ あした 6時に 起きます。 I’ll get up at six tomorrow morning.
⑥ けさ 6時に 起きました。 I got up at six this morning.

2) Question forms of verb sentences are made in the same way as those of noun sentences; i.e., the word order remains the same and か is added to the end of the sentence.

In answering such questions, the verbs in the questions are repeated. そうですね or そうじゃありません (see Lesson 2) cannot be used.

⑦ きのう 勉強しましたか。 Did you study yesterday?
　…はい、勉強しました。 …Yes, I did.
　…いいえ、勉強しませんでした。 …No, I didn’t.
8. 毎朝 何時に起床ですか。 What time do you get up every morning?
…6時に起床。 I get up at six.

4. N(time)に

When a verb denotes a momentary action or movement, the time when it occurs is marked with the particle に. に is added when the noun before it uses a numeral. It can also be added to the days of the week, though it is not essential. When the noun does not use a numeral, に is not added.

9. 6時半に起床。 I get up at six thirty.
10. 7月2日に日本へ来ました。 I came to Japan on July 2nd. (L. 5)
11. 日曜日に奈良へ行きます。 I'm going to Nara on Sunday. (L. 5)
12. きのう勉強しました。 I studied yesterday.

5. N1からN2まで

1) から indicates the starting time or place, and まで indicates the finishing time or place.

13. 9時から5時まで働きます。 I work from nine to five.
14. 大阪から東京まで3時間かかります。 It takes three hours from Osaka to Tokyo. (L. 11)

2) から and まで are not always used together.

15. 9時から働きます。 I work from nine.

3) 〜から、〜まで or 〜から〜まで is sometimes used with です added directly after either.

16. 銀行は9時から3時までです。 The bank is open from nine to three.
17. 昼休みは12時からです。 Lunchtime starts at twelve.

6. N1とN2

The particle と connects two nouns in coordinate relation.

18. 銀行の休みは土曜日と日曜日です。 The bank is closed on Saturdays and Sundays.

7. のえ

のえ is attached to the end of a sentence to add feeling to what the speaker says. It shows the speaker’s sympathy or the speaker’s expectation that the listener will agree. In the latter usage, it is often used to confirm something.

19. 毎日10時ごろまで勉強します。I study till about ten every day.
…大変ですね。 …That must be hard.

20. 山田さんの電話番号は871の6813です。
…871の6813ですね。 Mr. Yamada’s telephone number is 871-6813.
…871-6813, right?
## Lesson 5

### I. Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>いきます</td>
<td>go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>きます</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かえります</td>
<td>go home, return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>がっこう</td>
<td>school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>スーパー</td>
<td>supermarket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>えき</td>
<td>station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ひこうき</td>
<td>airplane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ふね</td>
<td>ship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>でんしゃ</td>
<td>electric train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ちかてつ</td>
<td>subway, underground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>しんかんせん</td>
<td>the Shinkansen, the bullet train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>バス</td>
<td>bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>タクシー</td>
<td>taxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>じてんしゃ</td>
<td>bicycle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あるいは</td>
<td>on foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ひと</td>
<td>person, people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ともだち</td>
<td>friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かれ</td>
<td>he, boyfriend, lover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かのじょ</td>
<td>she, girlfriend, lover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かぞく</td>
<td>family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ひとりで</td>
<td>alone, by oneself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>せんしゅう</td>
<td>last week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>こんしゅう</td>
<td>this week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>らいしゅう</td>
<td>next week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>せんげつ</td>
<td>last month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>こんげつ</td>
<td>this month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>らいげつ</td>
<td>next month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>きょねん</td>
<td>last year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ことし</td>
<td>this year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>らいねん</td>
<td>next year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>日本語</td>
<td>英語</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-つの</td>
<td>-th month of the year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>なんのつ</td>
<td>what month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ついたち</td>
<td>first day of the month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ふつか</td>
<td>second, two days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>みっか</td>
<td>third, three days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>よっか</td>
<td>fourth, four days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>いつか</td>
<td>fifth, five days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>むいか</td>
<td>sixth, six days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>なのか</td>
<td>seventh, seven days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ようか</td>
<td>eighth, eight days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ここのか</td>
<td>ninth, nine days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>とおか</td>
<td>tenth, ten days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>じゅうようか</td>
<td>fourteenth, fourteen days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>はつか</td>
<td>twentieth, twenty days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>にじゅうようか</td>
<td>twenty fourth, twenty four days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>にち - -日</td>
<td>-th day of the month, -days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>なんにち</td>
<td>which day of the month, how many days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>いつ</td>
<td>when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>たんじょうび</td>
<td>birthday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ふつう</td>
<td>local (train)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>きゅうこう</td>
<td>rapid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>とっきゅう</td>
<td>express</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>つさの</td>
<td>next</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**会話**

どう いたしております。
-番線

You’re welcome./Don’t mention it.
platform - , -th platform

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>名称</th>
<th>解説</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>博多</td>
<td>name of a town in Kyushu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>伏見</td>
<td>name of a town in Kyoto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>甲子園</td>
<td>name of a town near Osaka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>大阪城</td>
<td>Osaka Castle, a famous castle in Osaka</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns

1. I [will] go to Kyoto.
2. I [will] go home by taxi.
3. I came to Japan with my family.

Example Sentences

1. Where will you go tomorrow?
   …I will go to Nara.
2. Where did you go last Sunday?
   …I didn’t go anywhere.
3. How will you go to Tokyo?
   …I will go by Shinkansen.
4. Who will you go to Tokyo with?
   …I will go with Mr. Yamada.
5. When did you come to Japan?
   …I came here on March 25th.
6. When is your birthday?
   …It is June 13th.

Conversation

Does this train go to Koshien?

Santos: Excuse me. How much is it to Koshien?
Woman: It’s 350 yen.
Santos: 350 yen? Thank you very much.
Woman: You’re welcome.

----------------------------------------
Santos: Excuse me. What platform is it for Koshien?
Station employee: No. 5.
Santos: Thanks.

----------------------------------------
Santos: Excuse me. Does this train go to Koshien?
Man: No, it doesn’t. The next “local train” does.
Santos: Thank you very much.
### National Holidays

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Holiday Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1月1日</td>
<td>New Year’s Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1月第2月曜日**</td>
<td>Coming-of-Age Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2月11日</td>
<td>National Foundation Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3月20日*</td>
<td>Vernal Equinox Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4月29日</td>
<td>Greenery Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5月3日</td>
<td>Constitution Memorial Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5月4日</td>
<td>Nation’s Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5月5日</td>
<td>Children’s Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7月20日</td>
<td>Marine Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9月15日</td>
<td>Respect-for-the-Aged Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9月23日*</td>
<td>Autumnal Equinox Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10月第2月曜日**</td>
<td>Health and Sports Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11月3日</td>
<td>Culture Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11月23日</td>
<td>Labor Thanksgiving Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12月23日</td>
<td>The Emperor’s Birthday</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Varies from year to year.
** The second Monday

---

If a national holiday falls on a Sunday, the following Monday is taken off instead. From April 29th to May 5th is a series of holidays, called ゴールデンウィーク (Golden Week). Some big companies give a whole week’s holiday to employees.
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. **N (place) へ 行きます／来ます／帰ります**

When a verb indicates movement to a certain place, the particle へ is put after the place noun to show the direction of the move.

① 京都 へ 行きます。 I will go to Kyoto.
② 日本 へ 来ました。 I came to Japan.
③ うち へ 帰ります。 I will go home.

[Note] The particle へ is read へ.

2. **どこ [へ] も 行きません／行きませんでした**

When an interrogative takes the particle も and the verb following it is negative, all that is represented by the interrogative is denied.

④ どこ [へ] も 行きません。 I don’t go anywhere.
⑤ 何も 食べません。 I don’t eat anything. (L. 6)
⑥ だれも いません。 Nobody is there. (L. 10)

3. **N (vehicle) で 行きます／来ます／帰ります**

The particle で indicates a means or a method. When verbs denoting movement (いきます, きます, かえります, etc.) are used with で, で indicates a means of transportation. The noun preceding で is a vehicle in this case.

⑦ 電車 で 行きます。 I’ll go by train.
⑧ タクシー で 来ました。 I came by taxi.

When you walk somewhere, you use the expression あるいは. In this case, で is not used.

⑨ 駅から 歩いて 帰りました。 I walked home from the station.

4. **N (person/animal) と V**

When you do something with a person (or an animal), the person (or the animal) is marked with the particle と.

⑩ 家族 と 日本 へ 来ました。 I came to Japan with my family.

If you do something alone, the expression ひとり で is used. In this case, と is not used.

⑪ 一人 で 東京 へ 行きます。 I’ll go to Tokyo alone.
5. いつ

To ask about time, the interrogatives using なん such as なんじ, なんようび and なんがつなんにち are used. Other than these, the interrogative いつ (when) is also used to ask when something will happen/happened. いつ does not take the particle に.

12 いつ 日本へ 来ましたか。 When did you come to Japan?
     …3月25日に 来ました。 …I came on March 25th.

13 いつ 広島へ 行きますか。 When will you go to Hiroshima?
     …来週 行きます。 …I’ll go there next week.

6. よ

よ is placed at the end of a sentence. It is used to emphasize information which the listener does not know, or to show that you are giving your judgement or views assertively.

14 この 電車は 甲子園へ 行きますか。 Does this train go to Koshien?
     …いいえ、行きません。次の 普通ですよ。 …No, it doesn’t. The next local train does.

15 無理な ダイエットは 体に よくないですよ。 Excessive dieting is bad for your health. (L. 19)
Lesson 6

I. Vocabulary

たべます  食べます  eat
のみます  飲みます  drink
すいます  吸います  smoke [a cigarette]

[たばこを～]
みます  見ます  see, look at, watch
ききます  聞きます  hear, listen
よみます  読みます  read
かきます  書きます  write, draw, paint
かいいます  買います  buy
とります  撮ります  take [a photograph]

[しゃしんを～]  [写真を～]
します  do
あいいます  会います  meet [a friend]

[ともだちに～]  [友達に～]
ごはん  a meal, cooked rice
あさごはん  朝ごはん  breakfast
ひるごはん  昼ごはん  lunch
ばんごはん  晩ごはん  supper

パン  bread
たまご  卵  egg
にく  肉  meat
さかな  魚  fish
やさい  野菜  vegetable
くだもの  果物  fruit

みず  water
おちゃ  お茶  tea, green tea
こうちゃ  紅茶  black tea
ぎゅうにゅう  牛乳  milk

ジュース  juice
ビール  beer

[お]さけ  [お]酒  alcohol, Japanese rice wine
ビデオ
えいが
CD
てがみ
レポート
しゃしん
みせ
レストラン
にわ

シュクダい
宿題
テニス
サッカー

[お]はなみ
[お]花見

なに
何

いっしょに
ちょっと
いつも
ときどき
時々

それから
ええ
いいですね。
わかりました。

会話
何ですか。
じゃ、また、[あした]。

メキシコ
大阪城公園

video tape, video deck
movie
CD, compact disc
letter
report
photograph
store, shop
restaurant
garden

homework (〜をします: do homework)
tennis (〜をします: play tennis)
soccer, football
(〜をします: play soccer)
cherry-blossom viewing
(~をします: go cherry-blossom viewing)

what
together
a little while, a little bit
always, usually
sometimes

after that, and then
yes
That's good.
I see.

Yes?
See you [tomorrow].

Mexico
Osaka Castle park
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns
1. I drink juice.
2. I buy a newspaper at the station.
3. Won’t you come to Kobe with me?
4. Let’s take a rest for a little bit.

Example Sentences
1. Do you smoke?
   ⋅⋅⋅No, I don’t.
2. What do you eat every morning?
   ⋅⋅⋅I have egg and toast.
3. What did you eat this morning?
   ⋅⋅⋅I didn’t eat anything.
4. What did you do last Saturday?
   ⋅⋅⋅I studied Japanese. Then I saw a movie.
   On Sunday what did you do?
   ⋅⋅⋅I went to Nara with a friend.
5. Where did you buy that bag?
   ⋅⋅⋅I bought it in Mexico.
6. Won’t you drink some beer with me?
   ⋅⋅⋅Yes, let’s have a drink.

Conversation

Won’t you join us?

Sato: Mr. Miller.
Miller: Yes?
Sato: I’m going to enjoy cherry-blossom viewing with my friends tomorrow.
      Won’t you join us, Mr. Miller?
Miller: That sounds nice. Where will you go?
Sato: Osakajo-Koen.
Miller: What time?
Sato: At ten o’clock. Let’s meet at Osakajo-Koen Station.
Miller: OK.
Sato: Well, see you tomorrow.
日本はfoodsを多く輸入する。foodの自給率は穀物30%、野菜85%、果物49%、肉57%、海産物61%（1995年、農林水産省）。穀物の中で、米は唯一日本が自給している。
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. \textbf{N を V (transitive)}

\text{を} is used to indicate the direct object of a transitive verb.

① ジュースを 飲みます。 I drink juice.

[Note] を and お are pronounced the same. The former is used only in writing the particle.

2. \textbf{N を します}

The words used as the objects of the verb します cover a fairly wide range. します means that the action denoted by the noun is performed. Some examples are shown below.

1) to “play” sports or games
   サッカーを します play football
   トランプを します play cards

2) to “hold” gatherings
   パーティーを します give a party
   会議を します hold a meeting

3) to “do” something
   宿題を します do homework
   仕事を します do one’s work

3. 何を しますか

This is a question to ask what someone does.

② 月曜日 何を しますか。 What will you do on Monday?
   ... 京都へ 行きます。 ...I’ll go to Kyoto.

③ きのう 何を しましたか。 What did you do yesterday?
   ... サッカーを しました。 ...I played football.

[Note] You can make a word expressing time the topic by adding は.

④ 月曜日は 何を しますか。 On Monday what will you do?
   ... 京都へ 行きます。 ...I’ll go to Kyoto.

4. なん and なに

Both なんと なに mean “what.”

1) なんと is used in the following cases.
   (1) When it precedes a word whose first mora is either in the た, だ or な-row.

   ⑤ それは 何ですか。 What is that?
   ⑥ 何の 本ですか。 What is the book about?

   ⑦ 寝る まえに、何と言いますか。 What do you say before going to bed? (L. 21)
(2) When it is followed by a counter suffix or the like.

⑧ テレサちゃんは 何歳ですか。 How old is Teresa?

2) に is used in all other cases.

⑨ 何を 買いますか。 What will you buy?

5. **N(place)で V**

When added after a noun denoting a place, で indicates the place where an action occurs.

⑩ 駅で 新聞を 買います。 I buy the newspaper at the station.

6. **Vませんか**

When you want to invite someone to do something, this expression is used.

⑪ いっしょに 京都へ 行きませんか。
…ええ、いいですね。
Won’t you come to Kyoto with us?
…That’s a nice idea.

7. **Vましょう**

This expression is used when a speaker is positively inviting the listener to do something with the speaker. It is also used when responding positively to an invitation.

⑫ ちょっと 休みましょう。 Let’s have a break.

⑬ いっしょに 昼ごはんを 食べませんか。
…ええ、食べましょう。
Won’t you have lunch with me?
…Yes, let’s go and eat.

[Note] An invitation using **Vませんか** shows more consideration to the listener’s will than that using **Vましょう**.

8. **お**

You learned in Lesson 3 that the prefix お is attached to words regarding the listener or the person being referred to to show respect (e.g., [お] くに country).

お is also attached to various other words when the speaker is speaking politely (e.g., [お] さけ alcohol, [お] はなみ cherry-blossom viewing).

There are some words that are usually used with お without meaning respect or politeness (e.g., おちゃ tea, おかね money).
Lesson 7

I. Vocabulary

きります  ります  cut, slice
おくります  します  send
あげます  ます  give
もらいます  います  receive
かります  います  lend
借ります  います  borrow
おしえます  ます  teach
ならいます  います  learn
かけます  ます  make [a telephone call]

[でんわを ～]  [電話を ～]

て  手  hand, arm
はし  chopsticks
スプーン  spoon
ナイフ  knife
フォーク  fork
はさみ  scissors

ファクス  fax
ワープロ  word processor
パソコン  personal computer

パンチ  punch
ホッチキス  stapler
セロテープ  Scotch tape, clear adhesive tape
けしゴム  消しゴム  eraser
かみ  紙  paper

はな  花  flower, blossom
シャツ  shirt
プレゼント  present, gift
にもつ  荷物  baggage, parcel
おかね  お金  money
きっぷ  切符  ticket

クリスマス  Christmas
ちち   父   (my) father
はは   母   (my) mother
おとうさん   お父さん   (someone else’s) father
おかあさん   お母さん   (someone else’s) mother
もう
まだ
これから

[～]すてきですね。

What a nice [～]!

会話

ごめんください。

いらっしゃい。
どうぞ お上がりください。
失礼します。

[～は] いかがですか。

いただきます。

旅行

お土産

ヨーロッパ
スペイン

Excuse me./Anybody home?/May I come in? (an expression used by a visitor)
How nice of you to come. (lit. Welcome.)
Do come in.
Thank you./May I? (lit. I'm afraid I'll be disturbing you.)
Won't you have [～]?/Would you like to have [～]? (used when offering something)
Thank you./I accept. (said before starting to eat or drink)
trip, tour
(～をします: travel, make a trip)
souvenir, present

Europe
Spain
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns

1. I write letters with a word processor.
3. I received some chocolates from Ms. Karina.

Example Sentences

1. Did you study Japanese through television?
   …No, I studied it through radio.
2. Do you write reports in Japanese?
   …No. I write them in English.
3. What is “Good-by” in Japanese?
   …It is “Sayonara.”
4. Who will you write Christmas cards to?
   …To my family and friends.
5. What is that?
   …It’s a pocket notebook. I received it from Mr. Yamada.
6. Have you bought your Shinkansen ticket?
   …Yes, I have.
7. Have you finished lunch?
   …No, not yet. I am going to eat now.

Conversation

Hello

Jose Santos: Hello.
Yamada Ichiro: Hello. Please come in.
Jose Santos: Thank you.

Yamada Tomoko: How about a cup of coffee?
Maria Santos: Thank you.

Yamada Tomoko: Here you are.
Maria Santos: Thank you.
   This spoon is nice, isn’t it?

Yamada Tomoko: Yes, it is. Someone in my company gave it to me.
   It’s a souvenir of her trip to Europe.
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. **N (tool/means) で V**
   The particle で indicates a method or a mean used for an action.
   
   ① はしで食べます。 I eat with chopsticks.
   ② 日本語でレポートを書きます。 I write a report in Japanese.

2. "Word/Sentence" は 〜語で 何ですか
   This question is used to ask how to say a word or a sentence in other languages.
   
   ③ 「ありがとう」は英語で何ですか。
       …「Thank you」です。
       What’s “ありがとう” in English?
       …It’s “Thank you.”
   ④ 「Thank you」は日本語で何ですか。
       …「ありがとう」です。
       What’s “Thank you” in Japanese?
       …It’s “ありがとう.”

3. **N (person) にあげます, etc.**
   Verbs like あげます, かします, おしえます, etc., need persons to whom you give, lend, teach, etc. The persons are marked with に.
   
   ⑤ 山田さんは木村さんに花をあげました。
       Mr. Yamada gave flowers to Ms. Kimura.
   ⑥ イーさんに本を貸しました。
       I lent my book to Ms. Lee.
   ⑦ 太郎君に英語を教えます。
       I teach Taro English.

   [Note] With verbs like おくります, でんわをかけます, etc., place nouns can be used instead of N(person). In this case, the particle へ is sometimes used instead of に.
   
   ⑧ 会社に電話をかけます。
       (へ)
       I'll call my office.
4. N(person) に もらいます, etc.

Verbs like もらいます, かります and ならいます express actions from the receiving side. The persons from whom you receive those actions are marked with に.

9. 木村さんは 山田さんに 花を もらいました。
   Ms. Kimura received flowers from Mr. Yamada.

10. カリナさんに CDを 借りました。
    I borrowed a CD from Ms. Karina.

11. ワンさんに 中国語を 習います。
    I learn Chinese from Mr. Wang.

から is sometimes used instead of に in this sentence pattern. When you receive something from an organization like a school or a company, only から is used.

12. 木村さんは 山田さんから 花を もらいました。
    Ms. Kimura received flowers from Mr. Yamada.

13. 銀行から お金を 借りました。
    I borrowed some money from the bank.

5. もう Vました

もう means “already” and is used with Vました. In this case, Vました means that the action has been finished.

The answer to the question もう Vましたか is はい、もう Vました or いいえ、まだです.

14. もう 貨物を 送りましたか。
    Have you sent the parcel yet?
    …はい、[もう] 送りました。
    …Yes, I have [already sent it].
    …いいえ、まだです。
    …No, not yet.

In giving a negative answer to this type of question, you should not use Vませんでした, as this simply means you did not do the specified task rather than you have not done it yet.
Lesson 8

I. Vocabulary

ハンサム [な]
きれい [な]
すずか [な]
にぎやか [な]
ゆうめい [な]
しんせつ [な]
げんき [な]
ひま [な]
べんり [な]
すてき [な]
おおきい
ちいさい
あたらしい
ふるい
いい (よい)
わるい
あつい
さむい
tremei
むずかしい
yasasii
たかい
やすい
ひくい
おもしろい
おいしい
いそがしい
たのしい

ハンサム [な]
きれい [な]
すずか [な]
にぎやか [な]
ゆうめい [な]
しんせつ [な]
げんき [な]
ひま [な]
べんり [な]
すてき [な]
おおきい
ちいさい
あたらしい
ふるい
いい (よい)
わるい
あつい
さむい
tremei
むずかしい
yasasii
たかい
やすい
ひくい
おもしろい
おいしい
いそがしい
たのしい

handsome
beautiful, clean
quiet
lively
famous
kind
healthy, sound, cheerful
free (time)
convenient
fine, nice, wonderful

おおきい
daiki
小さい
saii
新しい
shii
古い
i
悪い
aji
暑い, 熱い
atsui
寒い
samui
cold (referring to temperature)
cold (referring to touch)
ad
美しい
eii
難しい
dei
易しい
saisi
高い
kai
難しい
eii
低い
at
おもしろい
osimoroi
おいしい
ussi
いそがしい
isogaisi
たのしい
tonaisi

big, large
small, little
new
old (not of age)
good
bad
hot
cold (referring to temperature)
cold (referring to touch)
difficult
easy
expensive, tall, high
inexpensive
low
interesting
delicious, tasty
busy
enjoyable

しろい
hii
白い
hii
白い

white
black
red
blue

さくら
sakura
桜
cherry (blossom)
yam
yama
山
mountain
町  town, city
食べ物  food
車  car, vehicle
ところ  place
寮  dormitory
べんきょう  study
せいかつ  life
[お]仕事  work, business
(〜をします: do one’s job, work)
どう  how
どんな〜  what kind of 〜
どれ  which one (of three or more)
とても  very
あまり  not so (used with negatives)
そして  and (used to connect sentences)
〜が、〜  〜, but 〜
おげんきですか。 お元気ですか。
そうですね。  How are you?  Well let me see. (pausing)

会話
日本の 生活に 慣れましたか。
[〜、]もう 一杯 いかがですか。
いいえ、けっこうです。
もう 〜です[ね]。
そろそろ 失礼します。
また いらっしゃって ください。
Have you got used to the life in Japan?
Won’t you have another cup of [〜]?
No, thank you.
It’s already 〜[, isn’t it?].
It’s almost time to leave now.
Please come again.

富士山  Mt. Fuji, the highest mountain in Japan
琵琶湖  Lake Biwa, the biggest lake in Japan
シャンハイ  Shanghai (上海)
「七人の 侍」  "The Seven Samurai," a classic movie by
金閣寺  Akira Kurosawa
Kinkakuji Temple (the Golden Pavilion)
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns
1. Cherry blossoms are beautiful.
2. Mt. Fuji is high.
3. Cherry blossoms are beautiful flowers.
4. Mt. Fuji is a high mountain.

Example Sentences
1. Is Osaka lively?
   • Yes, it is.
2. Is the water of Lake Biwa clean?
   • No, it is not so clean.
3. Is it cold in Beijing now?
   • Yes, it is very cold.
   Is it cold in Shanghai, too?
   • No, it is not so cold.
4. Is that dictionary good?
   • No, it is not so good.
5. How do you like the subway in Tokyo?
   • It is clean. And it is convenient.
6. I saw a movie yesterday.
   • What kind of movie was it?
   It was "The Seven Samurai." It is old, but a very interesting movie.
7. Which is Mr. Miller’s umbrella?
   • That blue one is.

Conversation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yamada Ichiro: Have you got accustomed to living in Japan, Maria?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maria Santos: Yes, I have. I enjoy it every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yamada Ichiro: Really? Mr. Santos, how is your work?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jose Santos: Well, it's busy, but interesting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yamada Tomoko: Would you like another cup of coffee?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maria Santos: No, thank you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jose Santos: Oh, it’s eight o’clock now. We must be going.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yamada Ichiro: You must?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maria Santos: Thank you for everything today.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yamada Tomoko: Our pleasure. Please come again.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
III. Reference Words & Information

色・味  COLOR & TASTE

色  Color

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>noun</th>
<th>adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>白 white</td>
<td>白い</td>
<td>黄色 yellow</td>
<td>黄色い</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>黒 black</td>
<td>黒い</td>
<td>茶色 brown</td>
<td>茶色い</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>赤 red</td>
<td>赤い</td>
<td>ピンク pink</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>青 blue</td>
<td>青い</td>
<td>オレンジ orange</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>緑 green</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>グレー gray</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>紫 purple</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>ベージュ beige</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

味  Taste

甘い sweet  辛い hot  苦い bitter  塩辛い salty

酸っぱい sour  濃い thick, strong  薄い thin, weak

春・夏・秋・冬  Spring-Summer-Autumn-Winter

There are four seasons in Japan, spring (March, April, May), summer (June, July, August), autumn (September, October, November), and winter (December, January, February). The average temperature varies from place to place, but the change patterns are almost the same (see the graph).

The hottest month is August and the coldest, January or February. So Japanese people feel that “summer is hot,” “autumn is cool,” “winter is cold,” and “spring is warm.”
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. Adjectives

Adjectives are used as 1) predicates and 2) noun modifiers. They inflect and are divided into two groups, い-adjectives and な-adjectives, according to the inflection.

2. Nは な-adj [な]です
Nは い-adj (〜い)です

1) です at the end of an adjective sentence shows the speaker's polite attitude toward the listener. An い-adjective with い at the end comes before です, whereas a な-adjective without [な] comes before です.

① ワット先生は 親切です。 Mr. Watt is kind.
② 富士山は 高いです。 Mt. Fuji is high.

です is used when a sentence is non-past and affirmative.

2) な-adj [な] じゃ ありません
The negative form of な-adj [な] です is な-adj [な] じゃない ありません.
(な-adj [な] では ありません)

③ あそこは 静かじゃ ありません。 It's not quiet there.
(では)

3) い-adj (〜い) です→〜くないです
To make the negative form of an い-adjective, い at the end of the い-adjective is altered to くない.

④ この 本は おもしろくないです。 This book is not interesting.

The negative for いです is よくないです.

4) Questions using adjective sentences are made in the same way as those using noun or verb sentences. In answering a question, you repeat the adjective used in the question. そうです or そうじゃ ありません cannot be used.

⑤ 北京は 寒いですか。 Is it cold in Beijing?
…はい、寒いです。
…Yes, it is.

⑥ 琵琶湖の 水は きれいですか。 Is the water of Lake Biwa clean?
…いいえ、きれいじゃ ありません。…No, it isn’t.

3. な-adj な N
い-adj (〜い) N

An adjective is put before a noun to modify it. A な-adjective needs な before a noun.

⑦ ワット先生は 親切な 先生です。 Mr. Watt is a kind teacher.
⑧ 富士山は 高い 山です。 Mt. Fuji is a high mountain.
4. とても/あまり

とても and あまり are adverbs of degree. Both come before the adjectives they are modifying.

とても is used in affirmative sentences, and means “very.” あまり is used in negative sentences. あまり and a negative form mean “not very.”

⑨ 北京は とても 寒いです。
Beijing is very cold.

⑩ これは とても 有名な 映画です。
This is a very famous movie.

⑪ 上海は あまり 寒くないです。
Shanghai is not very cold.

⑫ さくら大学は あまり 有名な 大学じゃ ありません。
Sakura University is not a very famous university.

5. Nは どうですか

This question is used to ask an impression or an opinion about a thing, place or person, etc., that the listener has experienced, visited or met.

⑬ 日本の 生活は どうですか。
How is the life in Japan?
･･･楽しいです。
･･･It’s enjoyable.

6. N1は どんな N2ですか

When the speaker wants the listener to describe or explain N1, this question pattern is used. N2 denotes the category N1 belongs to. The interrogative どんな is always followed by a noun.

⑭ 奈良は どんな 町ですか。
What kind of town is Nara?
･･･古い 町です。
･･･It’s an old town.

7. S1が、S2

が is a conjunctive particle, meaning “but.” It is used to link sentences.

⑮ 日本の 食べ物は おいしいですが、高いです。
Japanese food is good, but expensive.

8. どれ

This interrogative is used to ask the listener to choose or designate one from more than two things concretely shown or named.

⑯ ミラーさんの 傘は どれですか。
Which is Mr. Miller’s umbrella?
･･･あの 青い 傘です。
･･･That blue one is.
I. Vocabulary

わからいます  understand
あります  have

すき[な]  like
きれい[な]  dislike
じょうず[な]  good at
へた[な]  poor at

りょうり  dish (cooked food), cooking
のみもの  drinks
スポーツ  sport (〜をします: play sports)
やきゅう  baseball (〜をします: play baseball)
ダンス  dance (〜をします: dance)
おんがく  music
うた  song
classical music
ジャズ  jazz
コンサート  concert
カラオケ  karaoke
かぶき  Kabuki (traditional Japanese musical
drama)
え  picture, drawing

じ  letter, character
かんじ  Chinese characters
ひらがな  Hiragana script
かたかなか  Katakana script
ローマじ  the Roman alphabet

こまかい  small change
おかね  ticket

じかん  time
ようじ  something to do, errand
やくそく  appointment, promise
ごしゅじん ご主人 (someone else’s) husband おっと／しゅじん 夫／主人 (my) husband おくさん 奥さん (someone else’s) wife つま／かない 妻／家内 (my) wife こども 子ども child

よく well, much だいたい mostly, roughly たくさん many, much すこし a little, a few ぜんぜん 全然 not at all (used with negatives) はやく 早く、速く early, quickly, fast

~から because ~ どうして why

さんねんです[ね]。残念です[ね]。I’m sorry (to hear that). / That’s a pity. すみません。I am sorry.

＜会話＞
もしもし hello (used on the phone) ああ oh いっしょに いかがですか。Won’t you join me (us)? [～は] ちょっと……。[～] is a bit difficult. (an euphemism used when declining an invitation) だめですか。So you cannot (come)? また 今度 お願いします。Please ask me again some other time. (used when refusing an invitation indirectly, considering someone’s feelings)

小沢 征爾 famous Japanese conductor (1935－)
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns
1. I like Italian cuisine.
2. I understand Japanese a little.
3. Today is my child’s birthday, so I will go home early.

Example Sentences
1. Do you like alcohol?
   No, I don’t.
2. What kind of sports do you like?
   I like soccer.
3. Is Ms. Karina good at drawing pictures?
   Yes, she is very good at it.
4. Do you understand Indonesian, Mr. Tanaka?
   No, I do not understand it at all.
5. Do you have any small change?
   No, I don’t.
6. Do you read newspapers every morning?
   No, as I don’t have the time, I don’t.
7. Why did you go home early yesterday?
   Because I had something to do.

Conversation

That’s too bad

Miller: Hello. This is Miller.
Kimura: It’s you, Mr. Miller. Good evening. How are you?
Miller: Fine. Thank you.
Well, Ms. Kimura. How would you like to go to a concert by Seiji Ozawa?
Kimura: That sounds nice. When will it be?
Miller: It’s on Friday night of next week.
Kimura: Friday?
Friday’s a bit difficult.
Miller: So you can’t come?
Kimura: I have arranged to meet a friend on Friday night.
Miller: You have. I’m sorry to hear that.
Kimura: I am, too. Please invite me again some other time.
### III. Reference Words & Information

#### 音楽・スポーツ・映画  
**MUSIC, SPORTS & MOVIES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>音楽</th>
<th>Film</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Music</td>
<td>Film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ポップス</strong></td>
<td><strong>pop</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ロック</strong></td>
<td><strong>rock</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ジャズ</strong></td>
<td><strong>jazz</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ラテン</strong></td>
<td><strong>Latin American music</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>クラシック</strong></td>
<td><strong>classical music</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>民謡</strong></td>
<td><strong>folk music</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>演歌</strong></td>
<td><strong>traditional Japanese popular songs</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ミュージカル</strong></td>
<td><strong>musical</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>オペラ</strong></td>
<td><strong>opera</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>S F</strong></td>
<td><strong>SF film</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ホラー</strong></td>
<td><strong>horror film</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>アニメ</strong></td>
<td><strong>animated film</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ドキュメンタリー</strong></td>
<td><strong>documentary film</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>恋愛</strong></td>
<td><strong>romantic film</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ミステリー</strong></td>
<td><strong>mystery film</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>文芸</strong></td>
<td><strong>movie based on a classic work</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>戦争</strong></td>
<td><strong>war film</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>アクション</strong></td>
<td><strong>action film</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>喜劇</strong></td>
<td><strong>comedy film</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### スポーツ  
**Sports**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>スポーツ</th>
<th>Sports</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ソフトボール</strong></td>
<td><strong>softball</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>サッカー</strong></td>
<td><strong>soccer</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ラグビー</strong></td>
<td><strong>rugby football</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>バレーボール</strong></td>
<td><strong>volleyball</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>バスケットボール</strong></td>
<td><strong>basketball</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>テニス</strong></td>
<td><strong>tennis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ボーリング</strong></td>
<td><strong>bowling</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>スキー</strong></td>
<td><strong>skiing</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>スケート</strong></td>
<td><strong>skating</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>野球</strong></td>
<td><strong>baseball</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>卓球/ビンボン</strong></td>
<td><strong>ping-pong</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>相撲</strong></td>
<td><strong>sumo</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>柔道</strong></td>
<td><strong>judo</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>剣道</strong></td>
<td><strong>Japanese fencing</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>水泳</strong></td>
<td><strong>swimming</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### IV. Grammar Explanation

1. **N が あります／わかります**
   
   The object of a transitive verb is marked with な. However, objects of the verbs あります and わかります are marked with が.

   Such adjectives as すきです、きらいです、じょうずです and へたです require objects, and these are marked with が, too. The verbs and adjectives whose objects are marked with が are those kinds that describe preference, ability, possession and the like.

   1. わたしは イタリア料理が 好きです。 　I like Italian food.
   2. わたしは 日本語が わかります。 　I understand Japanese.
   3. わたしは 車が あります。 　I have a car.

2. **どんな N**

   Other than the usage you learned in Lesson 8, どんな is also used to ask the listener to name one from a group which the noun after どんな denotes.

   4. どんな スポーツが 好きですか。…サッカーが 好きです。 　What sports do you like?…I like football.

3. **よく／だいたい／たくさん／少し／あまり／全然**

   These adverbs are put before verbs when they modify them. The following is a summary of their usage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>degree</th>
<th>adverb + affirmative</th>
<th>adverb + negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>high</td>
<td>よく わかります</td>
<td>あまり わかりません</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>だいたい わかります</td>
<td>ぜんぜん わかりません</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>low</td>
<td>すこし わかります</td>
<td>あまり わかりません</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amount</th>
<th>adverb + affirmative</th>
<th>adverb + negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>large</td>
<td>たくさん あります</td>
<td>あまり ありません</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>すこし あります</td>
<td>ぜんぜん ありません</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>small</td>
<td>たくさん ありません</td>
<td>あまり ありません</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>すこし ありません</td>
<td>ぜんぜん ありません</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
５英語がよくわかります。I understand English very well.
６英語が少しわかります。I understand English a little.
７英語があまりわかりません。I don’t understand English so well.
８お金がたくさんあります。I have a lot of money.
９お金が全然ありません。I don’t have any money.

[Note] すこし and ぜんぜん can also modify adjectives.
10ここは少し寒いです。It’s a little cold here.
11あの映画は全然おもしろくないです。That movie is not interesting at all.

4. [S₁から、S₂]
から connects two sentences together to denote a causal relationship. S₁ is the reason for S₂.
12時間がありませんから、新聞を読みません。Because I don’t have time, I don’t read the newspaper.

You can also state S₂ first and add the reason after it.
13毎朝新聞を読みますか。
　いいえ、読みません。時間がありませんから。
Do you read a newspaper every morning?
　No, I don’t. Because I have no time.

5. どうして
The interrogative どうして is used to ask a reason. The answer needs から at the end.
14どうして朝新聞を読みませんか。
　時間がありませんから。
Why don’t you read a newspaper in the morning?
　Because I don’t have time.

The question どうしてですか is also used to ask the reason for what the other person has said.
15今日は早く帰ります。I’ll go home early today.
　どうしてですか。
　……Why?
子どもたちの誕生日ですから。Because today’s my child’s birthday.
# Lesson 10

## I. Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>います</td>
<td>exist, be (referring to animate things)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あります</td>
<td>exist, be (referring to inanimate things)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>いろいろ[な]</td>
<td>various</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>おとこのひと</td>
<td>man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>おんなのひと</td>
<td>woman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>おとこのこ</td>
<td>boy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>おんなのこ</td>
<td>girl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>いぬ</td>
<td>dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ねこ</td>
<td>cat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>き</td>
<td>tree, wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>もの</td>
<td>thing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>フィルム</td>
<td>film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>でんち</td>
<td>battery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>はこ</td>
<td>box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>スイッチ</td>
<td>switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>れいぞうこ</td>
<td>refrigerator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>テーブル</td>
<td>table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ベッド</td>
<td>bed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>たな</td>
<td>shelf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ドア</td>
<td>door</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>まど</td>
<td>window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ポスト</td>
<td>mailbox, postbox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ビル</td>
<td>building</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>こうえん</td>
<td>park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>きっさてん</td>
<td>coffee shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ほんや</td>
<td>bookstore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>～や</td>
<td>~ store</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>のりば</td>
<td>a fixed place to catch taxis, trains, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>けん</td>
<td>prefecture</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ue
shita
mae
ushiro
megi
hidari
naka
soto
nakari
chakku
aida

on, above, over
under, below, beneath
front, before
back, behind
right [side]
left [side]
in, inside
outside
next, next door
near, vicinity
between, among

~ya ~[nado]  
ichiban ~
~danme ~

t, , and so on
the most ~ (ichiban uye: the top)
the -th shelf (dan is the counter for shelves)

<会話>
[どうも] すみません。
チリソース
奥
スパイス・コーナー

Thank you.
chili sauce
the back
spice corner

東京ディズニーランド
ユニーヤ・ストア

Tokyo Disneyland
fictitious supermarket
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns
1. Ms. Sato is over there.
2. There is a photo on the desk.
3. My family is in New York.
4. Tokyo Disneyland is in Chiba Prefecture.

Example Sentences
1. You see that man over there. Who is that?
   ⋅⋅⋅He is Mr. Matsumoto of IMC.
2. Is there a telephone near here?
   ⋅⋅⋅Yes, it is over there.
3. Who is in the garden?
   ⋅⋅⋅Nobody is. There is a cat.
4. What is there in the box?
   ⋅⋅⋅There are old letters and photos and so on.
5. Where is Mr. Miller?
   ⋅⋅⋅He is in the meeting room.
6. Where is the post office?
   ⋅⋅⋅It is near the station. It is in front of the bank.

Conversation

Do you have chili sauce in this store?

Miller: Excuse me. Where is Yunyu-ya Store?
Woman: Yunyu-ya Store?
       You see that white building over there?
       The store is in that building.
Miller: I see. Thank you.
Woman: Not at all.

Miller: Excuse me, do you have chili sauce?
Shop assistant: Yes.
              There is a spice corner on the right-hand side at the back.
              Chili sauce is on the second rack from the bottom.
Miller: I see. Thanks.
How to Use a Japanese Bath

1. Wash and rinse yourself in the tiled area before getting in the bath.
2. Soap and shampoo should never be used in the bath. The bath is for soaking and relaxing.
3. When you get out of the bath, you don't drain the water as someone else may wish to use it. Put a cover on the bath.

How to Use the Toilet

Japanese style

Western style
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. **N が あります／います**

This sentence pattern is used to indicate the existence or presence of a thing(s) or person(s). The thing(s) or person(s) in such a sentence is treated as the subject and marked with the particleが.

1) **あります** is used when what is present is inanimate or does not move by itself. Things, plants and places belong in this category.

① コンピューターがあります。 There is a computer.
② 桜が あります。 There are cherry trees.
③ 公園が あります。 There is a park.

2) When what is present is animate and moves by itself, **います** is used. People and animals belong in this category.

④ 男の 人が います。 There is a man.
⑤ 犬が います。 There is a dog.

2. **N1(place) に N2 が あります／います**

1) The place where N2 is present is indicated by the particleに.

⑥ わたしの 部屋に 機が あります。 There is a desk in my room.
⑦ 事務所に ミラーさんが います。 Mr. Miller is in the office.

2) You can ask what or who is present at/in the place by using this pattern. The interrogative なに is used for things and だれ is used for persons.

⑧ 地下に 何が ありますか。 What is there in the basement?
…レストランが あります。 …There are restaurants.
⑨ 受付に だれが いますか。 Who is at the reception desk?
…木村さんが います。 …Ms. Kimura is there.

3. **N1 は N2(place) に あります／います**

1) In this sentence pattern, the speaker picks up N1 as the topic, and explains where it is. The topic should be something or someone that both the speaker and the listener know about. The particle attached to N1 is notが, which marks the subject, butは, which marks the topic.

⑩ 東京ディズニーランドは 千葉県に あります。
Tokyo Disneyland is in Chiba Prefecture.

⑪ ミラーさんは 事務所に います。 Mr. Miller is in the office.

2) When you ask where N1 is, this sentence pattern is used.

⑫ 東京ディズニーランドは どこに ありますか。
Where is Tokyo Disneyland?
…千葉県に あります。 …It's in Chiba Prefecture.

⑬ ミラーさんは どこに いますか。
Where is Mr. Miller?
…事務所に います。 …He's in the office.
[Note] です is sometimes used to replace a verb predicate when the predicate is obvious. The sentence N₁ は N₂(place)にあります/います can be replaced by the sentence N₁ は N₂(place)です, which you learned in Lesson 3.

14 東京ディズニーランドは どこにありますか。
…千葉県です。
Where is Tokyo Disneyland?
…It’s in Chiba Prefecture.

4. N₁(thing/person/place) の N₂(position)
うえ, した, まえ, うしろ, みぎ, ひだり, なか, そと, となり, ちかく and あいだ are nouns denoting position.

15 机の上に写真があります。
There is a picture on the desk.

16 郵便局は銀行の前にあります。
The post office is next to the bank.

[Note] As these are place nouns, not only に but also particles like で can come after them.

17 駅の近くで 友達に会いました。
I met a friend near the station.

5. N₁ or N₂
Nouns are connected in coordinate relation by the particle と. While と enumerates all the items, と shows a few representative items. Sometimes など is put after the last noun to explicitly express that there are also some other things of the kind.

18 箱の中に手紙や写真があります。
There are letters, pictures and so on in the box.

19 箱の中に手紙や写真などがあります。
There are letters, pictures and so on in the box.

6. Word (s) ですか
The particle か has the function to confirm. The speaker picks up a word or words he/she wants to confirm and confirms it (them) using this pattern.

20 すみません。ユニーヤ・ストアは どこですか。
…ユニーヤ・ストアですか。あのビルの中です。
Excuse me, but where is Yunyu-ya Store?
…Yunyu-ya Store? It’s in that building.

7. チリソースは ありませんか
The expression チリソースは ありませんか is found in the conversation of this lesson. By using the negative form ありませんか instead of ありますか, you can be indirect and polite, showing that you are prepared for a negative answer.
Lesson 11

I. Vocabulary

います [こどもが～] [子どもが～] have [a child]
います [にほんに～] [日本に～] stay, be [in Japan]
かかります 休息します take (referring to time or money)
[かいしゃを～] [会社を～] take a day off [work]

ひとつ 1つ one (used when counting things)
ふたつ 2つ two
みつ 3つ three
よっつ 4つ four
いつつ 5つ five
むっつ 6つ six
ななつ 7つ seven
やっつ 8つ eight
ここのつ 9つ nine
とお 10 ten
いくつ how many

ひとり 1人 one person
ふたたり 2人 two persons
にん 人 people

だい 台 (counter for machines, cars, etc.)
まい 枚 (counter for paper, stamps, etc.)
かい 回 - times

りんご apple
みかん mandarin orange
サンドイッチ sandwich
カレー[ライス] curry [and rice]
アイスクリーム ice cream

きって 切手 postage stamp
はがき post card
ふうとう 封筒 envelope
そくたつ 速達 special delivery
かきとめ 書留 registered mail
エアメール
(こうくうびん) (航空便)
ふなびん 船便

りょうしん 両親
きょうだい 兄弟
あに 兄
おにいさん お兄さん
あね 姉
おねえさん お姉さん
おとうと 弟
おとうとさん 弟さん
いもうと 妹
いもうとさん 妹さん

がいこく 外国
－じかん －時間
－じゅうかん －週間
－かげつ －か月
－ねん －年
～ぐらい about ～
どのくらい

ぜんぶで 全部で
みんな in total
all, everything

～だけ only ～

いらっしゃいませ。 Welcome./May I help you? (a greeting to a customer or a guest entering a shop, etc.)

会話
いい [お]天気ですね。 Nice weather, isn’t it?
お出かけですか。 Are you going out?
ちょっと ～まで。 I’m just going to ～.
行って いらっしゃい。 So long. (lit. Go and come back.)
行って まいります。 So long. (lit. I’m going and coming back.)
それから and, furthermore

オーストラリア Australia
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns
1. There are seven tables in the meeting room.
2. I will stay in Japan for one year.

Example Sentences
1. How many apples did you buy?
   ⋅⋅⋅I bought four.
2. Give me five 80-yen stamps and two postcards, please.
   ⋅⋅⋅Certainly. That’s 500 yen in all.
3. Are there foreign teachers at Fuji University?
   ⋅⋅⋅Yes, there are three. They are all Americans.
4. How many people are there in your family?
   ⋅⋅⋅There are five. My parents, my elder sister, my elder brother and me.
5. How many times a week do you play tennis?
   ⋅⋅⋅I play it about twice a week.
6. How long did you study Spanish, Mr. Tanaka?
   ⋅⋅⋅I studied it for three months.
      Only three months? You speak it very well.
7. How long does it take from Osaka to Tokyo by Shinkansen?
   ⋅⋅⋅It takes two and a half hours.

Conversation

Please send this by sea mail

Janitor: Nice weather, isn’t it? Are you going out?
Wang: Yes, I am going to the post office.
Janitor: Really? See you later.
Wang: See you.

Wang: I would like to send this by special delivery.
Post office clerk: Sure. To Australia? That’s 370 yen.
Wang: And also this parcel.
Post office clerk: By sea mail or airmail?
Wang: How much is sea mail?
Post office clerk: 500 yen.
Wang: How long will it take?
Post office clerk: It will take about one month.
Wang: Well, please send it by sea mail.
III. Reference Words & Information

メニュ－ MENU

定食 set meal
ランチ set meal in the western style

天丼 a bowl of rice with fried fish and vegetables
親子丼 a bowl of rice with chicken and egg
牛丼 a bowl of rice with beef
焼肉 grilled meat
野菜たまめ sautéed vegetables

漬物 pickles
みそ汁 miso soup
おにぎり riceball

teんぷら
すし fried seafood and vegetables
vinegared rice with raw fish

うどん Japanese noodles made from wheat flour
そば Japanese noodles made from buckwheat flour
ラーメン Chinese noodles in soup with meat and vegetables

焼きそば Chinese stir-fried noodles with pork and vegetables
お好み焼き a type of pancake grilled with meat, vegetables and egg

カレーライス curry and rice
ハンバーグ hamburg steak
コロッケ croquette
tれびフライ fried shrimp
フライドチキン fried chicken

サラダ salad
スープ soup
スパゲティー spaghetti
ピザ pizza
ハンバーガー hamburger
サンドウィッチ sandwich
トースト toast

コーヒー coffee
紅茶 black tea
ココア cocoa
ジュース juice
コーラ cola
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. Saying numbers

1) ひとつ, ふたつ……とお

These words are used to count things up to ten. Eleven and higher are counted by using the numbers themselves.

2) Counter Suffixes

When counting some sorts of things or expressing the quantity of things, counter suffixes are attached after the numbers.

- 人 number of people except for one and two
  ひとり (1人) and ふたり (2人) are used for one and two.
  4人 (four people) is read よにん.

- 台 number of machines or vehicles like cars and bicycles

- 枚 number of thin or flat things such as paper, dishes, shirts, CDs, etc.

- 回 times

- 分 minutes

- 時間 hours

- 日 days

The number of days takes the counter suffix にち. However, from two to ten, the same words as used for dates are used. (“One day” is 1にち, “two days” is ふつか, ……, “ten days” is とおか.)

- 週間 weeks

- か月 months

- 年 years

Details and other counter suffixes are listed in the appendices.

3) Usage

Quantifiers (numbers with counter suffixes) are usually put before the verbs they modify. However, this is not always the case with length of time.

① りんごを 4つ 買いました。 We bought four apples.

② 外国人の 学生が 2人 います。 There are two foreign students.

③ 国で 2か月 日本語を 勉強しました。

I studied Japanese for two months in my country.

4) Interrogatives

(1) いくつ is used to ask how many about things which are counted as ひとつ, ふたつ, ……

④ みかんを いくつ 買いましたか。
  … 8つ 買いました。

How many mandarin oranges did you buy?
  … I bought eight.
(2) な is used with a counter suffix to ask how many.

⑤ この 会社に 外国人が 何人 いますか。
…5人 います。
How many foreigners are there in this company?
…There are five.

⑥ 毎晩 何時間 日本語を 勉強しますか。
…2時間 勉強します。
How many hours do you study Japanese every night?
…Two hours.

(3) どのくらい is used to ask the length of time something takes. You can use various units of time in the answer.

⑦ どのくらい 日本語を 勉強しましたか。
…3年 勉強しました。
How long did you study Japanese?
…I studied it for three years.

⑧ 大阪から 東京まで どのくらい かかりますか。
…新幹線で 2時間半 かかります。
How long does it take from Osaka to Tokyo?
…It takes two and a half hours by Shinkansen.

5) くらい

くらい is added after quantifiers to mean “about.”

⑨ 学校に 先生が 30人ぐらい います。
There are about thirty teachers in our school.

⑩ 15分ぐらい かかります。 It takes about fifteen minutes.

2. Quantifier (period) に 一回 V

With this expression you can say how often you do something.

⑪ 1か月に 2回 映画を 見ます。 I go to see movies twice a month.

3. Quantifier だけ／Nだけ

だけ means “only.” It is added after quantifiers or nouns to express that there is no more or nothing (no one) else.

⑫ パワ電気の 外国人の 社員が 1人だけ います。
There is only one foreign employee in Power Electric.

⑬ 休みは 日曜日だけです。 I only have Sundays off.
# Lesson 12

## I. Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>かんたん [な]</th>
<th>簡単 [な]</th>
<th>easy, simple</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ちかい</td>
<td>近い</td>
<td>near</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>とおい</td>
<td>遠い</td>
<td>far</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>はやい</td>
<td>速い, 早い</td>
<td>fast, early</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>おそい</td>
<td>遅い</td>
<td>slow, late</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>おい</td>
<td>多い</td>
<td>many [people], much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ひとつ～]</td>
<td>[人が～]</td>
<td>few [people], a little</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>すくない</td>
<td>少ない</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ひとつ～]</td>
<td>[人が～]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あたたかい</td>
<td>暖かい, 温かい</td>
<td>warm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>すずしい</td>
<td>涼しい</td>
<td>cool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>まあい</td>
<td>甘い</td>
<td>sweet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>からい</td>
<td>辛い</td>
<td>hot (taste), spicy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>おもい</td>
<td>重い</td>
<td>heavy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かるい</td>
<td>軽い</td>
<td>light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>いい</td>
<td>prefer [coffee]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>せせつ</th>
<th>季節</th>
<th>season</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>はる</td>
<td>春</td>
<td>spring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>なつ</td>
<td>夏</td>
<td>summer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あき</td>
<td>秋</td>
<td>autumn, fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ふゆ</td>
<td>冬</td>
<td>winter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>てんき</th>
<th>天気</th>
<th>weather</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>あめ</td>
<td>雨</td>
<td>rain, rainy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ゆき</td>
<td>雪</td>
<td>snow, snowy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>くもり</td>
<td>曇り</td>
<td>cloudy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| ホテル | | hotel |
| くうこう | 空港 | airport |
| うみ | 海 | sea, ocean |

| せかい | 世界 | world |
パーティー
[お]まつり [お]祭り
【試験】
【すき焼き】
すき焼き すき焼き
さしみ 刺身
【お】すし てんぷら
すき焼き（beef and vegetable hot pot）
sashimi（sliced raw fish）
sushi（vinegared rice topped with raw fish）
tempura（seafood and vegetables deep fried in batter）
いけばな 生け花
flower arrangement（〜をします：practice flower arrangement）
もみじ 紅葉
maple, red leaves of autumn
どちら どちらも
which one（between two things）
both
ずっと はじめて 初めて
by far
for the first time

会話
ただいま。
お帰りなさい。
すごいですね。
でも
疲れました。
I'm home.
Welcome home.
That's amazing.
but
(I'm) tired.

祇園祭
the Gion Festival, the most famous festival in Kyoto
ホンコン
Hong Kong（香港）
シンガポール
Singapore
毎日屋
fictitious supermarket
ABCストア
fictitious supermarket
ジャパン
fictitious supermarket
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns
1. It was rainy yesterday.
2. It was cold yesterday.
3. Hokkaido is bigger than Kyushu.
4. I like summer best of the year.

Example Sentences
1. Was Kyoto quiet?
   ⋅⋅⋅No, it wasn’t.
2. Was the trip enjoyable?
   ⋅⋅⋅Yes, it was very enjoyable.
3. Was the weather good?
   ⋅⋅⋅No, it wasn’t so good.
4. How was the party yesterday?
   ⋅⋅⋅It was very lively. I met various people.
5. Are there more people in Tokyo than in New York?
   ⋅⋅⋅Yes, a lot more.
6. Which is the faster way to get to the airport, by bus or by train?
   ⋅⋅⋅The train is faster.
7. Which do you prefer, the sea or the mountains?
   ⋅⋅⋅I like both.
8. What do you like best of all Japanese dishes?
   ⋅⋅⋅I like tempura best.

Conversation

How was the Festival?

Miller: Hello. (I’m home.)
Janitor: Hello. (Welcome home.)
Miller: This is a souvenir from Kyoto.
Janitor: Thank you.
Miller: How was the Gion Festival?
Janitor: The Gion Festival is the most famous of all the festivals in Kyoto.
Miller: Is that so?
Janitor: Did you take photos?
Miller: Yes, I took about a hundred photos.
Janitor: Amazing!
Miller: Yes. But it made me a bit tired.
III. Reference Words & Information

祭りと名所    FESTIVALS & PLACES OF NOTE

鹿苑寺 (金閣寺)  金閣

富士山

姫路城

祇園祭

原爆ドーム

広島

天神祭

東大寺・大仏

東京

東照宮

日光

京都

奈良

神田祭
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. Past tense of noun sentences and な-adjective sentences

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>non-past (present/future)</th>
<th>past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>affirmative</td>
<td>N あめ  Schultz です</td>
<td>N あめ でした</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>な-adj</td>
<td>しずか</td>
<td>しずか</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negative</td>
<td>N あめ じゃありません (では)</td>
<td>N あめ じゃありませんでした (では)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>な-adj</td>
<td>しずか</td>
<td>しずか</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

① きのうは 雨でした。 It was rainy yesterday.
② きのうの 試験は 簡単じゃありませんでした。
  Yesterday’s exam was not easy.

2. Past tense of い-adjective sentences

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>non-past (present/future)</th>
<th>past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>affirmative</td>
<td>あついます</td>
<td>あつかったです</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negative</td>
<td>あつくないです</td>
<td>あつくなかったです</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

③ きのうは 夏かったです。 It was hot yesterday.
④ きのうの パーティーは あまり楽しくなかったです。
  I didn’t enjoy yesterday’s party very much.

3. N₁は N₂より adjective です

This sentence pattern describes the quality and/or state of N₁ in comparison with N₂.

⑤ この 車は あの 車より大きいです。
  This car is bigger than that car.

4. N₁と N₂と どちらが adjective ですか。

The question asks the listener to choose between two items (N₁ and N₂). The interrogative used is always どちら if the comparison is made between two items.

⑥ サッカーと 野球と どちらが おもしろいですか。
  •サッカーのほうがおもしろいです。
  Which is more interesting, baseball or football?
  •Football is.
7. ミラーさんとサントスさんとどちらがテニスが上手ですか。
Who is a better tennis player, Mr. Miller or Mr. Santos?

8. 北海道と大阪とどちらが涼しいですか。
Which is cooler, Hokkaido or Osaka?

9. 春と秋とどちらが好きですか。
Which do you like better, spring or autumn?

10. 日本料理での何がいちばんおいしいですか。
Among Japanese dishes, what is the most delicious?

11. ヨーロッパでどこがいちばんよかったですか。
In Europe, where did you like best?

12. 家族でだれがいちばん背が高いですか。
Who is the tallest of your family?

13. 1年にいつがいちばん寒いですか。
When is the coldest time of a year?

[Note] When the subject is an interrogative, the particle が is used. (See Lesson 10, なにがありますか/だれがいますか.)

When the subject of an adjective sentence is questioned, が is attached to the interrogative in the same way.
Lesson 13

I. Vocabulary

あそびます 遊びます  enjoy oneself, play
およぎます 泳ぎます  swim
むかえます 迎えます  go to meet, welcome
つかれます 疲れます  get tired
だします 出します  send [a letter]
[てがみを～] [手紙を～]  
はいります 入ります  enter [a coffee shop]
[きさてんに～] [喫茶店に～]  
でます 出ます  go out [of a coffee shop]
[きさてんを～] [喫茶店を～]  
けっこんします 結婚します  marry, get married
かいものします 買い物します  do shopping
しょうじします 食事します  have a meal, dine
さんぽします 散歩します  take a walk [in a park]
[こうえんを～] [公園を～]  
たいへん[な] 大変[な]  hard, tough, severe, awful
ほしい 欲しい  want (something)
さびしい 寂しい  lonely
ひろい 広い  wide, spacious
せまい 狭い  narrow, small (room, etc.)

しゃくしょ プール  swimming pool
かわ 川  river

けいざい 経済  economy
びじゅつ 美術  fine arts
つり 釣り  fishing (～をします: fish, angle)
skiing (～をします: ski)
会議  meeting, conference
(～をします: hold a conference)

とうろく 登録  registration (～をします: register)
週末

about (time)

何か

something

どこか

somewhere, some place

おなかが すきました。
(I’m) hungry.

おなかが いっぱいです。
(I’m) full.

のどが かわきました。
(I’m) thirsty.

そうですね。
I agree with you.

そうしましょう。
Let’s do that. (used when agreeing with someone’s suggestion)

ご注文は？
May I take your order?

定食
set meal

牛丼
bowl of rice topped with beef

[少々] お待ちください。
Please wait [a moment].

別々に
separately

ロシア
Russia

つるや
fictitious Japanese restaurant

おはようテレビ
fictitious TV program
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns
1. I want a personal computer.
2. I want to eat tempura.
3. I will go to France to study cooking.

Example Sentences
1. What do you want most now?
   ••• I want a house.
2. Where do you want to go on summer vacation?
   ••• I want to go to Okinawa.
3. Because I am tired today, I don’t want to do anything.
   ••• Me, too. Today’s meeting was tough, wasn’t it?
4. What will you do this weekend?
   ••• I will go to Kobe with my children to see the ships.
5. What did you come to Japan to study?
   ••• I came here to study economics.
6. Did you go anywhere on winter vacation?
   ••• Yes, I did.
   Where did you go?
   ••• I went to Hokkaido to ski.

Conversation

Charge us separately

Yamada: Why, it’s already twelve. Shall we go for lunch?
Miller: Sure.
Yamada: Where shall we go?
Miller: Let me see. Today I want to eat Japanese food.
Yamada: Then, let’s go to “Tsuru-ya.”

Waiter: May I take your order?
Miller: I’ll have the tempura set lunch.
Yamada: I’ll have the gyudon.
Waiter: One tempura set lunch and one gyudon. I’ll be right back.

Cashier: 1,680 yen altogether, sir.
Miller: Excuse me. Please charge us separately.
Cashier: Right. 980 yen for the tempura set lunch, 700 yen for the gyudon.
III. Reference Words & Information

町の中 TOWN

博物館 museum 市役所 city hall
美術館 art museum 警察署 police
図書館 library 交番 police box
映画館 movie theater 消防署 fire station
動物園 zoo 駐車場 parking lot
植物園 botanical garden 大学 university
遊園地 amusement park 高校 senior high school
お寺 Buddhist temple 中学校 junior high school
神社 Shinto shrine 小学校 elementary school
教会 Christian church 幼稚園 kindergarten
モスク Mosque 肉屋 butcher’s shop
体育馆 gymnasiunm パン屋 bakery
プール swimming pool 魚屋 fishmonger’s
公園 park 酒屋 liquor shop
大使館 embassy 八百屋 vegetable shop
入国管理局 immigration bureau 喫茶店 coffee shop
コンビニ convenience store
スーパー supermarket
デパート department store
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. が 希望ですね

This sentence pattern is used to express the speaker’s desire to possess or have an object. It can also be used to ask what the listener wants. The object is marked with the particle が. 希望 is an い-adjective.

① わたしは 友達が 希望です。 I want a friend.
② 今 何が いちばん 希望ですか。 What do you want most now?
    ・・・車が 希望です。 ・・・I want a car most.
③ 子どもが 希望ですか。 Do you want a child?
    ・・・いいえ、好きじゃないです。 ・・・No, I don’t.

2. です-form たいです

1) Verb です-form

The form of a verb when it is used withです is called the です-form. In the word かいいます，かい is the です-form.

2) です-form たいです

This expresses the speaker’s desire to do something. It is also used to ask what the listener wants to do. In this expression, as is seen in ⑤ below, the particle が can replace the particle を. The other particles cannot be replaced by が.

V です-form たい inflects as an い-adjective.

④ わたしは 沖縄へ 行きたいです。 I want to go to Okinawa.
⑤ わたしは てんぷらを 食べたいです。 I want to eat tempura.
    （が）
⑥ 神戸で 何を 買いたいですか。 What do you want to buy in Kobe?
    （が）
    ・・・靴を 買いたいです。 ・・・I want to buy a pair of shoes.
    （が）
⑦ おなかが 痛いですから、何も 食べたくないです。 Because I have a stomachache, I don’t want to eat anything.

[Note 1] 希望です or 〜たいです cannot be used to describe the third person’s desire.

[Note 2] You can neither use 希望ですか nor です-form たいですか when you offer something or invite someone to do something. For example, when you offer a cup of coffee (or invite the listener to have a cup of coffee), you should not say, コーヒーが 希望ですか, nor should you say コーヒーを のみたいですか. Expressions such as コーヒーは いかがですか or コーヒーを のみませんか should be used.
3. \[ \text{N (place) へ \{ V ます-form \} に 行きます／来ます／帰ります} \]

The purpose for いきます，きます or かえります is expressed using this pattern. The purpose is marked with the particle に. A noun used before に is of the kind denoting an action.

⑧ 神戸へ インド料理を 食べに 行きます。
I’m going to Kobe to eat Indian food.

⑨ 神戸へ 買い物に 行きます。
I’m going to Kobe for shopping.

⑩ 日本へ 美術の 勉強に 来ました。
I came to Japan in order to study art.

[Note] You can also use nouns denoting events such as festivals and concerts before に. In this case, the speaker’s purpose is to see or enjoy the event.

⑪ あした 京都の お祭りに 行きます。
I’ll go to the festival in Kyoto tomorrow.

4. \[ \text{N に V ／N を V} \]

The particle に marks the goal when used with verbs like はいります, のります (get on; see Lesson 16), etc. The particle を marks the starting point or place when used with verbs like です, おります (get off; see Lesson 16), etc.

⑫ あの 喫茶店に 入りましょう。
Let’s go in that coffee shop.

⑬ 7時に うちを 出ます。
I leave my house at 7 o’clock.

5. どこか／何か

どこか means anywhere or somewhere. なにか means anything or something. The particles へ and を can be omitted.

⑭ 冬休みは どこか [へ] 行きましたか。
…はい、行きました。
Did you go anywhere in the winter vacation?
…Yes, I did.

⑮ のどが かわきましたから、何か [を] 飲みたいですね。
I’m thirsty. I want to drink something.

6. ご注文

ご is a prefix added to some words to express respect.

⑯ ご注文は？
May I have your order?
### Lesson 14

#### I. Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>つけます Ⅱ</td>
<td>turn on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>けしかします I</td>
<td>turn off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あけます Ⅱ</td>
<td>open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>しめます Ⅱ</td>
<td>close, shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>いそがります Ⅰ</td>
<td>hurry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>まちます I</td>
<td>wait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>とめます Ⅱ</td>
<td>stop, park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>まがります Ⅰ</td>
<td>turn [to the right]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[みぎへ～]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>もちます I</td>
<td>hold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>とります I</td>
<td>take, pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>てつだいます Ⅰ</td>
<td>help (with a task)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>よびます I</td>
<td>call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>はなします Ⅰ</td>
<td>speak, talk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>みせます Ⅱ</td>
<td>show</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>おしえます Ⅱ</td>
<td>tell [an address]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[じゅうしょを～]</td>
<td>[住所を～]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>はじめます Ⅱ</td>
<td>start, begin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ふります I</td>
<td>rain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[あめが～]</td>
<td>copy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[雨が～]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>コピーします Ⅲ</td>
<td>air conditioner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>エアコン</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>パスポート</td>
<td>passport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>なまえ</td>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>じゅうしょ</td>
<td>address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ちず</td>
<td>map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>しお</td>
<td>salt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>さとう</td>
<td>sugar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>よみかた</td>
<td>how to read, way of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>～かた</td>
<td>how to ～, way of ～</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>～方</td>
<td>ing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ゆっくり
すぐ
また
あとで
もう すこし もう 少し
もう ～

いいですよ。
さあ

あれ？

Sure./Certainly.
right (used when encouraging some course of action)
Oh! (in surprise or in wonder)

会話
信号を 右へ 曲がって ください。
まっすぐ
これで お願いします。
お釣り

Turn to the right at the signal.
straight
I'd like to pay with this.
change

梅田
name of a town in Osaka
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns
1. Wait a moment, please.
2. Mr. Miller is making a telephone call now.

Example Sentences
1. Please write your name and address here.
   ⋯Yes.
2. Please show me that shirt.
   ⋯Here you are.
   Do you have one a little bigger?
   ⋯Yes. How about this shirt?
3. Excuse me. Please tell me how to read this kanji?
   ⋯It’s “kakitome.”
4. It’s hot, isn’t it? Shall I open the window?
   ⋯Yes, please.
5. Shall I come to the station to pick you up?
   ⋯No, thank you. I will come by taxi.
6. Where is Ms. Sato?
   ⋯She is talking with Mr. Matsumoto in the meeting room.
   Then, I will come again later.

Conversation

To Umeda, please
Karina: To Umeda, please.
Driver: Yes.

Karina: Excuse me. Turn to the right at that traffic light.
Driver: To the right?
Karina: Yes.

Driver: Go straight?
Karina: Yes, go straight.

Karina: Stop in front of that flower shop.
Driver: Yes.
Karina: 1,800 yen, please.
Driver: Here you are.
Karina: That’s 3,200 yen change. Thank you.
### III. Reference Words & Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>切符売り場</td>
<td>ticket office, ticket area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>自動券売機</td>
<td>ticket machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>精算機</td>
<td>fare adjustment machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>改札口</td>
<td>wicket, ticket barrier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>出口</td>
<td>exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>入口</td>
<td>entrance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>東口</td>
<td>east exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>西口</td>
<td>west exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>南口</td>
<td>south exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>北口</td>
<td>north exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>中央口</td>
<td>central exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>特急</td>
<td>super-express train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>急行</td>
<td>express train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>快速</td>
<td>rapid service train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>準急</td>
<td>semi-express train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>普通</td>
<td>local train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>時刻表</td>
<td>timetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>～発</td>
<td>departing ～</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>～着</td>
<td>arriving at ～</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[東京]行き</td>
<td>for [TOKYO]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>定期券</td>
<td>commutation ticket, commuter pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>回数券</td>
<td>coupon ticket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>片道</td>
<td>one way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>往復</td>
<td>round trip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[プラット]ホーム</td>
<td>platform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>売店</td>
<td>kiosk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>コインロッカー</td>
<td>coin locker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>タクシー乗り場</td>
<td>taxi stand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>バスターミナル</td>
<td>bus terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>バス停</td>
<td>bus stop</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

![Diagram of a train station with various facilities and signs in Japanese and English](image)
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. Verb conjugation
   Verbs in Japanese change their forms, i.e., they conjugate, and they are divided into three groups according to the type of conjugation. Depending on the following phrases, you can make sentences with various meanings.

2. Verb groups
   1) Group I verbs
      In the verbs of this group, the last sound of the ます-form is that of the い-line.
      (See Main Textbook, p. 2, “かなと拍.”)
      かきます write のみます drink
   2) Group II verbs
      In most of the verbs of this group, the last sound of the ます-form is that of the え-line, but in some verbs the last sound of the ます-form is that of the い-line.
      たべます eat みせます show みます see
   3) Group III verbs
      Verbs of this group include します and “noun denoting an action + します” as well as きます.

3. Verb て-form
   The verb form which ends with て or で is called the て-form. How to make the て-form of a verb depends on which group the verb belongs to as explained below. (See Main Textbook, Lesson 14, p. 116, 練習 A 1.)
   1) Group I
      Depending on the last sound of the ます-form, the て-form of the verbs of this group is made as shown in the form table. (See Main Textbook, Lesson 14, 練習A 1.) Note that the て-form of the verb いきます, いって, is an exception.
   2) Group II
      Attach て to the ます-form.
   3) Group III
      Attach て to the ます-form.

4. くて-form ください Please do...
   This sentence pattern is used to ask, instruct or encourage the listener to do something. Naturally, if the listener is one’s superior, this expression cannot be used for giving instructions to him/her. The sentences shown below are examples of asking, instructing and encouraging, respectively.
   ① すみませんが、この 漢字の 読み方を 教えて ください。
      Excuse me, could you tell me how to read this kanji, please?
   ② ここに 住所と 名前を 書いて ください。
      Please write your name and address here.
   ③ ぜひ 遊びに 来て ください。
      Please come to my place. (L. 25)
When it is used to ask the listener to do something, すみませんが  is often added before V て-form ください as in ①. This expression is polite than only saying V て-form ください.

5. **V て-form います**, be V-ing

This sentence pattern indicates that a certain action or motion is in progress.

④ ミラーさんは 今 電話をかけています。
Mr. Miller is making a phone call now.

⑤ 今 雨が降っていますか。 Is it raining now?
…はい、降っています。
…Yes, it is.
…いいえ、降っていません。
…No, it is not.

6. **Vます-form ましょうか**, Shall I...?

This expression is used when the speaker is offering to do something for the listener.

⑥ A: あしたも来ましょうか。
B: ええ、10時に来てください。
…Yes, please come at ten.

⑦ A: 傘を貸しましょうか。
B: すみません。お願いします。
…Yes, please.

⑧ A: 荷物を持ちましょうか。
B: いいえ、けっこうです。
…No, thank you.

In the above example conversations, B demonstrates how to politely ask or instruct someone to do something (⑥), to accept an offer with gratitude (⑦) and to decline an offer politely (⑧).

7. **S₁が、S₂...**, but...

⑨ 失礼ですが、お名前は？
Excuse me, but may I have your name? (L.1)

⑩ すみませんが、塩を取ってください。Please pass me the salt.

You learned the conjunctive particle が in Lesson 8. In expressions such as しつれいですが or すみませんが, which are used as introductory remarks when speaking to someone, が, losing its original meaning, is used to connect two sentences lightly.

8. **NがV**

When describing a natural phenomenon, the subject is indicated by が.

⑪ 雨が降っています。 It is raining.
Lesson 15

I. Vocabulary

たちます I 立ちます stand up
すわります I 座ります sit down
つかいます I 使います use
おきます I 置きます put
つくります I 作ります, 造ります make, produce
うります I 売ります sell
しります I 知ります get to know
すみます I 住みます be going to live
けんきゅうします III 研究します do research
しって います 知って います know
すんで います 住んで います live [in Osaka]

[おおさかに 〜] [大阪に 〜]

しひょう 資料 materials, data
catalog
じこくひょう 時刻表 timetable

ふく 服 clothes
せいひん 製品 products
ソフト software
せんもん 専門 speciality, field of study

はいしゃ 歯医者 dentist, dentist’s
とこや 床屋 barber, barber’s

プレイガイド (theater) ticket agency

どくしん 独身 single, unmarried
特に
思い出します
ご家族
いらっしゃいます
高校

especially
remember, recollect
your family
be (honorific equivalent of います)
senior high school

日本橋

name of a shopping district in Osaka
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns

1. You may take photographs.
2. Mr. Santos has a personal computer.

Example Sentences

1. May I keep this catalog?
   • ...Sure, please do.
2. May I borrow this dictionary?
   • ...I'm sorry, but... I'm using it now.
3. You must not play here.
   • ...All right.
4. Do you know the phone number of the City Hall?
   • ...No, I don't.
5. Where do you live, Ms. Maria?
   • ...I live in Osaka.
6. Is Mr. Wang single?
   • ...No, he is married.
7. What is your job?
   • ...I am a teacher. I teach at Fuji University.
     Your speciality?
   • ...It's Japanese fine art.

Conversation

Tell me about your family

Miller: Today's movie was good, wasn't it?
Kimura: Yes, it was. The father was particularly good, wasn't he?
Miller: Yes. I was reminded of my family.
Kimura: Were you? Tell me about your family, Mr. Miller.
Miller: I have my parents and an elder sister.
Kimura: Where do they live?
Miller: My parents live near New York City.
          My sister is in London.
          How about your family, Ms. Kimura?
Kimura: There are three of us. My father works for a bank.
          My mother teaches English at a high school.
## Reference Words & Information

### Occupations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>職業</th>
<th>OCCUPATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>会社員</td>
<td>company employee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>公務員</td>
<td>civil servant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>駅員</td>
<td>station clerk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>銀行員</td>
<td>bank clerk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>郵便局員</td>
<td>postman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>店員</td>
<td>shop clerk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>調理師</td>
<td>cook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>理容師</td>
<td>barber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>美容師</td>
<td>beautician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>教師</td>
<td>teacher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>弁護士</td>
<td>lawyer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>研究者</td>
<td>research worker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>医者／看護婦</td>
<td>doctor/nurse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>運転手</td>
<td>driver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>警察官</td>
<td>policeman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>外交官</td>
<td>diplomat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>政治家</td>
<td>politician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>画家</td>
<td>painter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>作家</td>
<td>author</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>音楽家</td>
<td>musician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>建築家</td>
<td>architect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>エンジニア</td>
<td>engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>デザイナー</td>
<td>designer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ジャーナリスト</td>
<td>journalist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>歌手／俳優</td>
<td>singer/actor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>スポーツ選手</td>
<td>athlete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. **V て-form も いいです**  You may do...

   This expression is used to grant permission.
   ① 写真を撮っても いいです。 You may take pictures.
   To ask for permission, the question form of this sentence is used.
   ② たばこを吸っても いいですか。 May I smoke?
   How to answer such a question using the same sentence pattern is as follows. Note that an euphemistic answer is given when permission is not granted.
   ③ このカタログをもらっても いいですか。
       ⋯ええ、いいですよ。どうぞ。
       ⋯すみません。ちょっと。
       May I have this catalogue?
       ⋯Yes. Here you are.
       ⋯Sorry. I’m afraid not.

2. **V て-form は いけません**  You must not do...

   This sentence pattern is used to express prohibition.
   ④ ここでたばこを吸っては いけません。 禁煙ですから。
       You must not smoke here. Because this is no-smoking area.
   When you strongly wish to refuse permission to questions using the expression **V て-form も いいですか**, you answer いいえ、いけません, omitting **V て-form は**. This expression cannot be used by an inferior to a superior.
   ⑤ 先生、ここで遊んでも いいですか。
       いいえ、いけません。 May we play here, Ma’am?
       ⋯No, you must not.

3. **V て-form います**

   In addition to the usage of **V て-form います** you learned in Lesson 14, it is also used in describing a certain continuing state which resulted from a certain action in the past.
   ⑥ わたしは結婚しています。 I’m married.
   ⑦ わたしは田中さんを知っています。 I know Mr. Tanaka.
   ⑧ わたしは大阪に住んでいます。 I live in Osaka.
   ⑨ わたしはカメラを持っていいます。 I have a camera.

    Benton います means “be holding” and “possess” as well.
4. **Vで-form います**

**Vで-form います** is also used in describing a habitual action; that is, when the same action is repeatedly performed over a period of time.

Therefore, one’s occupation can be expressed by this sentence pattern, like in (10) and (13). So if the question おしことは なんですか is asked, this sentence pattern can be used to answer it.

10. IMCは コンピューターソフトを 作って います。
   IMC makes computer software.
11. スーパーで フィルムを 売って います。
   Supermarkets sell films.
12. ミラーさんは IMCで 働いて います。
   Mr. Miller works for IMC.
13. 妹は 大学で 勉強して います。
   My younger sister is studying at university.

5. **知りません**

The negative form of して います is しりません.

14. 市役所の 電話番号を 知って いますか。
    …はい、知って います。
    …いいえ、知りません。
    Do you know the telephone number of the city hall?
    …Yes, I do.
    …No, I don’t.
Lesson 16

I. Vocabulary

のります I 乗ります  ride, get on [a train]
    [でんしゃに ～] [電車に ～]
おります II 降ります  get off [a train]
    [でんしゃを ～] [電車を ～]
のりかえます II 乗り換えます change (trains, etc.)
あびます II 浴びます take [a shower]
    [シャワーを ～]
いずれます II 入れます  put in, insert
だします I 出します  take out, withdraw
はいります I 入ります enter [university]
    [だいがくに ～] [大学に ～]
でます II 出ます  graduate from [university]
    [だいがくを ～] [大学を ～]
やめます II 〔かいしゃを ～] 〔会社を ～] quit or retire from [a company], stop, give up
おします I 押します push, press

わかいか若い young
ながい  長い  long
みじかい  短い  short
あかるい  明るい  bright, light
くらかい  暗い  dark
せが  たかい  背が 高い tall (referring to person)
あたまが  いいい  頭が  いいい  clever, smart

からだ  体  body
あたま  頭  head
かみ  髪  hair
かお  顔  face
め  眼  eye
みみ  耳  ear
くち  口  mouth
は  歯  tooth
おなか  胃  stomach
あし  足  leg, foot

16
102
サービス
ジョギング
シャワー

みどり 緑
green, greenery

[お]てら [お]寺
Buddhist temple
じんじゃ 神社
Shinto shrine

りゅうがくせい 留学生
foreign student

-ぱん -番
number —

どうやって どの～
in what way, how
which ～ (used for three or more)

[いいえ,] まだまだです。[No,] I still have a long way to go.

＜会話＞
お引き出しですか。
Are you making a withdrawal?
まず
first of all
キャッシュカード
cash dispensing card
暗証番号
personal identification number, PIN
次に
next, as a next step
金額
amount of money
確認
confirmation (〜します: confirm)
ボタン
button

J R
Japan Railway
アジア
Asia
バンドン
Bandung (in Indonesia)
ベラクルス
Veracruz (in Mexico)
フランケン
Franken (in Germany)
ベトナム
Vietnam
フエ
Hue (in Vietnam)
大学前
fictitious bus stop
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns
1. In the morning I go jogging, take a shower and go to the office.
2. We dined at a restaurant after the concert was over.
3. The food is delicious in Osaka.
4. This personal computer is light and handy.

Example Sentences
1. What did you do yesterday?
   ⋅⋅⋅I went to the library and borrowed some books, and then met a friend.
2. How do you go to your university?
   ⋅⋅⋅I take a No. 16 bus from Kyoto Station and get off at Daigaku-mae.
3. What are you going to do after getting back to your country?
   ⋅⋅⋅I will work for my father’s company.
4. Which person is Mr. Santos?
   ⋅⋅⋅He is that tall man with dark hair.
5. What kind of city is Nara?
   ⋅⋅⋅It is a quiet and beautiful city.
6. Who is that person?
   ⋅⋅⋅That is Ms. Karina. She is Indonesian, and an overseas student at Fuji University.

Conversation

Tell me how to use this machine
Maria: Excuse me. Could you tell me how to use this machine?
Bank clerk: You want to make a withdrawal?
Maria: Yes.
Bank clerk: Then, please push this button, first.
Maria: Yes.
Bank clerk: Do you have a cash card?
Maria: Yes, here it is.
Bank clerk: Put it in here, and enter the code number.
Maria: Yes.
Bank clerk: Next, enter the sum.
Maria: Fifty thousand yen. Five...
Bank clerk: Push this “Man” and “En.”
   And then push this “Kakunin” button.
Maria: Got it. Thank you very much.
ATMの使い方   HOW TO WITHDRAW MONEY

1. Push お引き出し button.
2. Insert your card.
3. Enter your personal identification number.
4. Enter the amount. Press 円 button.
5. If the amount is correct, press 確認 button.
6. Take out notes.

お預け入れ  deposit
お振込  payment
お振り替え  transfer
お引き出し  drawing out
通帳記入  updating your pass book
残高照会  balance inquiry
暗証番号  personal identification number
円  円
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. \text{V て-form. [V て-form].} 

To connect verb sentences, the て-form is used. When two or more actions take place in succession, the actions are mentioned in the order of occurrence by using the て-form. The tense of the sentence is determined by the tense form of the last verb in the sentence.

① 朝 ジョギングをして、シャワーを浴びて、会社へ行きます。 
In the morning, I jog, take a shower and go to the office.

② 神戸へ行って、映画を見て、お茶を飲みました。 
I went to Kobe, saw a movie and drank tea.

2. \text{い-adj (〜い) 〜くて、〜} 

When joining an い-adjective sentence to another sentence, take away the い from the い-adjective and attach くて.

- おおきい  ➔  おおきくて big
- ちいさい  ➔  ちいさくて small
- いよいよ  ➔  (exception) いよいよ くて good

③ ミラーさんは若くて、元気です。 
Mr. Miller is young and lively.

④ きのうは 天気がよくて、暑かったです。 
Yesterday it was fine and hot.

3. \text{N な-adj [な] で、〜} 

When joining noun sentences or な-adjective sentences, です is changed to で.

⑤ カリナさんはインドネシア人で、京都大学の留学生です。 
Ms. Karina is an Indonesian and a student of Kyoto University.

⑥ ミラーさんはハンサムで、親切です。 
Mr. Miller is handsome and kind.

⑦ 奈良は 静かで、きれいな町です。 
Nara is a quiet and beautiful city.

[Note 1] The above structures can be used not only for connecting sentences relating to the same topic but also sentences with different topics.

⑧ カリナさんは学生で、マリアさんは主婦です。 
Ms. Karina is a student and Maria is a housewife.

[Note 2] This method cannot connect sentences of contradictory notion. In that case, が is used (see Lesson 8, 7).

× この 部屋は狭くて、きれいです。
〇 この 部屋は狭いですが、きれいです。This room is small but clean.
4. **V₁で-form から、V₂**

This sentence pattern indicates that upon completion of the action denoted by V₁, the action of V₂ is to be conducted. The tense of the sentence is determined by the tense form of the last verb in the sentence.

⑨ 国へ帰ってから、父の会社で働きます。
   I will work for my father's company after going back to my country.

⑩ コンサートが終わってから、レストランで食事しました。
   We ate at a restaurant after the concert was over.

[Note] The subject of a subordinate clause is indicated byが, as shown in the example sentence ⑩.

5. **N₁はN₂が adjective**

This sentence pattern is used to describe an attribute of a thing or a person. The topic of the sentence is denoted byは, N₁ is the topic of the sentence. N₂ is the subject of the adjective’s description.

⑪ 大阪は食べ物がおいしいです。Food is tasty in Osaka.

⑫ ドイツのフランケンはワインが有名です。
   Franken in Germany produces famous wine.

⑬ マリアさんは髪が長いです。Maria has long hair.

6. **どうやって**

どうやって is used to ask the way or the method of doing something. To answer such a question, the pattern learned in 1. is used.

⑭ 大学までどうやって行きますか。
   …京都駅から16番のバスに乗って、大学前で降ります。
   How do you go to your university?
   …I take a No.16 bus from Kyoto Station and get off at Daigaku-mae.

7. **どの N**

You learned in Lesson 2 thatこの, その andあの modify nouns. The interrogative word used in this system isどの.どの is used to ask the listener to define one among more than two which are concretely presented.

⑮ サントスさんはどの人ですか。
   …あの背が高くて、髪が黒い人です。
   Which one is Mr. Santos?
   …That tall man with black hair is.
I. Vocabulary

おばえます Ⅱ  覚えます  memorize
わすれます Ⅱ 忘れます  forget
なくします Ⅰ  lose
だします Ⅰ  出します  hand in [a report]

[レポートを～]
はらいます Ⅰ  払います  pay
かえします Ⅰ  返します  give back, return
でかけます Ⅱ  出かけます  go out
ぬぎます Ⅰ  脱ぎます  take off (clothes, shoes, etc.)
もっていきます Ⅰ 持って行きます  take (something)
もってきます Ⅲ 持って来ます  bring (something)
しんぱいします Ⅲ 心配します  worry
ざんぎょうします Ⅲ 残業します  work overtime
しゅっちょしよう Ⅲ 出張します  go on a business trip

のみます Ⅰ  飲みます  take [medicine]
[くすりを～]  [薬を～]
はいります Ⅰ  入ります  take [a bath]
[おふろに～]

たいせつ[な] 大切[な] important, precious
だいじょうぶ[な] 大丈夫[な] all right

あぶない 危ない dangerous

もんだい 問題 question, problem, trouble
こたえ 答え answer

さんえん 禁煙 no smoking
[けんこう]はけんしゅう [健康]保険証 [health] insurance card

かぜ cold, flu
ねつ fever
びょうき 病気 illness, disease
くすり 薬 medicine
[お] ふろ
うわぎ 上着
したぎ 下着
せんせい 先生
docor (used when addressing a medical doctor)

2、3にち 2、3日
a few days
2、3〜 a few〜 (〜 is a counter suffix)
〜までに before 〜, by 〜 (indicating time limit)

ですから
therefore, so

＜会話＞
どうしましたか。
What's the matter?
[〜が] 痛いです。
(I) have a pain [in my 〜].
のど
throat
お大事に。
Take care of yourself. (said to people who are ill)
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns
1. Please don’t take photographs here.
2. You must show your passport.
3. You do not have to submit the report.

Example Sentences
1. Do not park your car there, please.
   ●I am sorry.
2. Doctor, may I drink alcohol?
   ●No, refrain from it for two or three days.
   Yes, doctor.
3. Shall we go for a drink tonight?
   ●Sorry. Today I’m going out with my wife.
   So I must go home early.
4. By when do I have to submit the report?
   ●Submit it by Friday, please.
5. Do the children have to pay, too?
   ●No, they don’t have to pay.

Conversation

What seems to be the problem?
Doctor: What seems to be the problem?
Matsumoto: I have had a sore throat and a slight temperature since yesterday.
Doctor: Well, please open your mouth.

Doctor: You have a cold. You need a good rest.
Matsumoto: Doctor, I have to go to Tokyo on business from tomorrow.
Doctor: Well then, take this medicine and go to bed early today.
Matsumoto: Yes, doctor.
Doctor: And do not take a bath tonight.
Matsumoto: I see.
Doctor: Please take care.
Matsumoto: Thank you very much, doctor.
III. Reference Words & Information

体・病気  BODY & ILLNESS

どうしましたか  What seems to be the problem?

headache  have a headache
stomachache  have a stomachache
toothache  have a toothache
fever  have a fever
cough  have a cough
runny nose  have a runny nose
bleed  bleed
nausea  feel nauseous
chill  feel a chill
dizzy  feel dizzy
diarrhea  have diarrhea
constipated  be constipated
injured  get injured
burnt  get burnt
no appetite  have no appetite
stiff in shoulders  feel stiff in one’s shoulders
weary  feel weary
itchy  itchy

cold  cold
influenza  influenza
appendicitis  appendicitis
slipped disc  slipped disc
sprain  sprain
bone fracture  bone fracture
hangover  hangover
IV. Grammar Explanation

1.  Verb ない-form

The verb form used with ない is called the ない-form; that is to say, か of かならない is the ない-form of きます (write). How to make the ない-form is given below (see Main Textbook, Lesson 17, p. 140, 練習 A 1).

1) Group I

In the verbs of this group the last sound of the ます-form is always the sound in the い-line. So, replace it with the sound of the あ-line to make a ない-form. The exceptions to this rule are such verbs as かれます, あいます, etc. (わ is the last sound of the ない-form in these verbs instead of あ.) (See Main Textbook, p. 2, “かないと拍.”)

かきます → かかれない いそぎます → いそがれない
よみます → よまない あそびます → あそばない
とります → とらない まちます → またない
すいます → すわらない はなしいます → はなさない

2) Group II

The ない-form of verbs of this group is just the same as the ます-form.

たべます → たべない
みます → みない

3) Group III

The ない-form of します is the same as the ます-form. きます becomes こ(ない).

べんきょうします → べんきょうしない
しいます → しない
きいます → こない

2.  ない-form ないで ください

Please don’t...

This expression is used to ask or instruct someone not to do something.

① わたしは 元気ですから、心配しないで ください。
   I am fine, so please don’t worry about me.

② ここで 写真を 撮らないで ください。
   Please don’t take pictures here.

3.  ない-form なければ なりません

must...

This expression means something has to be done regardless of the will of the actor. Note that this doesn’t have a negative meaning.

③ 楽を 飲まなければならない なりません。 I must take medicine.
4. **V ない-form なくても いいです** need not ...

This sentence pattern indicates that the action described by the verb does not have to be done.

④ あした 来なくても いいです。 You don’t have to come tomorrow.

5. **N (object)は**

You learned in Lesson 6 that the particle を is attached to the direct object of verbs. Here you learn that the object is made a topic by replacing を with は。

ここに 荷物を 置かないで ください。
Please don’t put parcels here.

⑤ 荷物は ここに 置かないで ください。
As for parcels, don’t put them here.

会社の 食堂で 昼ごはんを 食べます。
I have lunch in the company cafeteria.

⑥ 昼ごはんは 会社の 食堂で 食べます。
As for lunch, I have it in the company cafeteria.

6. **N (time)までに V**

The point in time indicated by までに is the time limit by which an action is to be done.

⑦ 会議は 5時までに 終わります。
The meeting will be over by five.

⑧ 土曜日までに 本を 返さなければ なりません。
I must return the book by Saturday.

[Note] Make sure you do not confuse までに with the particleまで.

5 時まで 働きます。 I work until five. (L. 4)
I. Vocabulary

できます II be able to, can
あらいます I wash
ひきます I play (stringed instrument or piano, etc.)
うたいます I sing
あつめます II collect, gather
すてます II throw away
かえます II exchange, change
うんてんします III drive
よゆくします III reserve, book
けんがくします III visit some place for study

ピアノ piano
－メートル － meter
こくさい～ international ～
げんさん cash
しゅみ hobby
にっき diary
[お]いのり prayer (~をします: pray)
かちょう section chief
ぶちょう department chief
しゃちょう president of a company
動物
馬
へえ
それはおもしろいですね。
なかなか
牧場
ほとんどですか。
ぜひ

animal
horse
Really! (used when expressing surprise)
That must be interesting.
not easily (used with negatives)
ranch, stock farm
Really?
by all means

ビートルズ

the Beatles, famous British music group
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns
1. Mr. Miller can read Kanji.
2. My hobby is watching films.
3. I write in my diary before I go to bed.

Example Sentences
1. Can you ski?
   ⋅⋅Yes, I can. But I am not very good at it.
2. Can you use a personal computer, Ms. Maria?
   ⋅⋅No, I can’t.
3. Until what time can we visit Osaka Castle?
   ⋅⋅It is open until five o’clock.
4. Can I pay by credit card?
   ⋅⋅I am sorry, but please pay in cash.
5. What is your hobby?
   ⋅⋅Collecting old clocks and watches.
6. Must Japanese children learn Hiragana before they enter school?
   ⋅⋅No, they need not.
7. Please take this medicine before meals.
   ⋅⋅Yes, I will.
8. When did you get married?
   ⋅⋅We got married three years ago.

Conversation

What is your hobby?

Yamada: What is your hobby, Mr. Santos?
Santos: Photography.
Yamada: What kind of photos do you take?
Santos: Photos of animals. I like those of horses, especially.
Yamada: Oh, that’s interesting.
   Have you taken photos of horses since you came to Japan?
Santos: No.
   You can hardly ever see horses in Japan.
Yamada: There is a lot of pastureland for horses in Hokkaido.
Santos: Really?
   Then I would really like to go there on summer vacation.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>動き</th>
<th>ACTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>飛ぶ fly</td>
<td>跳ぶ jump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>泳ぐ swim</td>
<td>もぐる dive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>はう crawl</td>
<td>ける kick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>投げる throw</td>
<td>たたく pat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>曲げる bend</td>
<td>伸ばす extend</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. Verb dictionary form

This form is the basic form of a verb. Verbs are given in this form in the dictionary, hence the name. How to make the dictionary form is given below. (See Main Textbook, Lesson 18, p. 148, 練習 A 1.)

1) Group I

In the verbs of this group the last sound of the ます-form is always in the い-line. Replace it with the sound in the う-line to make the dictionary form. (See Main Textbook, p. 2, “かなと拍.”)

2) Group II

Attachる to the ます-form.

3) Group III

します becomes する and きます becomes くる.

2.

N
V dictionary form が できます can...

できます is the verb which expresses ability or possibility. A noun and V dictionary form こと before が indicates the content of ability or possibility.

1) Noun

Nouns placed before が are mostly nouns which express actions such as driving a car, shopping, skiing, dancing, etc. Nouns such as にほんご, which is associated with the action はなす, or ピアノ, which is associated with the action ひく, can also be used here.

① ミラーさんは 日本語が できます。

Mr. Miller can speak Japanese.

② 雪が たくさん 降りましたから、ことしは スキーが できます。

It’s snowed a lot, so we can ski this year.

2) Verb

When a verb is used to describe ability or possibility, こと should be attached to the dictionary form of the verb to make it a nominalized phrase and then が できます is put after that.

③ ミラーさんは 漢字を 読む ことが できます。

nominalized phrase Mr. Miller can read Kanji.

④ カードで 払う ことが できます。

nominalized phrase You can pay by credit card.

3.

わたしの 趣味は N V dictionary form ことです My hobby is...

As shown in ⑤ and ⑥ below, V dictionary form こと can express the content of hobbies more concretely than the noun alone can do.

⑤ わたしの 趣味は 音楽です。 My hobby is music.

⑥ わたしの 趣味は 音楽を 聞く ことです。 My hobby is listening to the music.
4. **V 1 dictionary form**
   
   N の まえに、V 2  ..., before...
   
   **Quantifier (period)**

1) **Verb**

   This sentence pattern indicates that the action of V 2 occurs before the action of V 1 takes place. Even when the tense of V 2 is in the past tense or the future tense, V 1 is always in the dictionary form.

   ⑦ 日本へ来る まえに、日本語を勉強しました。
   I studied Japanese before I came to Japan.

   ⑧ 寝る まえに、本を読みます。... I read a book before I go to bed.

2) **Noun**

   When まえに comes after a noun, the particle の is put between the noun and まえに. Nouns before まえに are nouns which express actions or nouns which imply actions.

   ⑨ 食事の まえに、手を洗います。... I wash my hands before eating.

3) **Quantifier (period)**

   When まえに comes after a quantifier (period), the particle の is not necessary.

   ⑩ 田中さんは時間が まえに、出かけました。
   Mr. Tanaka left an hour ago.

5. **なかなか**

   When なかなか is accompanied by a negative expression, it means “not easily” or “not as expected.”

   ⑪ 日本では なかなか馬を見ることができません。
   In Japan we can rarely see horses.

   [Note] は of に hon では in ⑪ is attached to で to emphasize the location or area under discussion.

6. **ぜひ**

   ぜひ is used with expressions of hope and request such as ほしいです, V ます-form たいです and V で-form ください and emphasizes the meaning of the expressions.

   ⑫ ぜひ 北海道へ行きたいです。
   I want to go to Hokkaido very much.

   ⑬ ぜひ遊びに来てください。
   Please come to my place. (L. 25)
I. Vocabulary

のぼります I 登ります climb [a mountain]
[やまに ～] [山に ～]
とまります I 泊まります stay [at a hotel]
[ホテルに ～]
そうじします III 掃除します clean (a room)
せんたくします III 洗濯します wash (clothes)
れんしゅうします III 練習します practice
なります I

ねむい 眠い sleepy
つよい 強い strong
よしい 弱い weak
ちょうしが いい 調子が いい be in good condition
ちょうしが わるい 調子が 悪い be in bad condition

ちょうし 調子 condition

ゴルフ sumo wrestling
golf ～をします: play golf
すもう 相撲 pinball game
パチンコ (～をします: play pachinko)

おちゃ 茶 tea ceremony

ひ 日 day, date

いちど 一度 once
いちども 一度も not once, never (used with negatives)
だんだん gradually
もうすぐ soon

おかげさまで Thank you. (used when expressing gratitude for help received)
会話

軽杯
実は
ダイエット
何回も
しかし
無理[な]
体にいい
ケーキ

・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・

葛飾 北斎

famous Edo period wood block artist and painter (1760-1849)
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns
1. I have been to see sumo.
2. On holidays I play tennis, take walks and so on.
3. It's going to get hotter and hotter from now on.

Example Sentences
1. Have you been to Hokkaido?
   ••• Yes, I once have. I went there two years ago with my friends.
2. Have you ever ridden a horse?
   ••• No, I never have. I am eager to try it.
3. What did you do on your winter vacation?
   ••• I visited temples and shrines in Kyoto, held a party with friends, and so on.
4. What would you like to do in Japan?
   ••• I would like to go on a trip, learn the tea ceremony and so on.
5. How are you feeling?
   ••• I've got better, thank you.
6. You have become good at Japanese.
   ••• Thank you, but I still have a long way to go.
7. Teresa, what would you like to be?
   ••• I would like to be a doctor.

Conversation

As for my diet, I'll start it tomorrow

All: Cheers!

Ms. Matsumoto: Why, Ms. Maria, you're not eating much.
Maria: No. To tell the truth, I have been on a diet since yesterday.
Ms. Matsumoto: Have you? I have tried being on a diet many times, too.
Maria: What kind of diets have you tried?
Ms. Matsumoto: I tried eating only apples, and drinking a lot of water, and so on.
Mr. Matsumoto: I'm afraid strict diets are not good for your health.
Maria: You are right.
Ms. Matsumoto: Ms. Maria, this cake is delicious.
Maria: Is it?
   ... I'll start dieting again tomorrow.
### III. Reference Words & Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>茶道</th>
<th>華道</th>
<th>書道</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tea ceremony</td>
<td>flower arrangement</td>
<td>calligraphy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>話 舞 伎</td>
<td>能</td>
<td>文 楽</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kabuki</td>
<td>Noh</td>
<td>Bunraku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>相撲</td>
<td>柔道</td>
<td>剣道</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sumo</td>
<td>judo</td>
<td>kendo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>空手</td>
<td>漫才・落語</td>
<td>囲碁・将棋</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karate</td>
<td>manzai, rakugo</td>
<td>go, shogi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>パチンコ</td>
<td>カラオケ</td>
<td>盆踊り</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pachinko</td>
<td>karaoke</td>
<td>Bon dance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. Verb た-form

In this lesson you learn the た-form. How to make the た-form is shown below. (See Main Textbook, Lesson 19, p. 156, 練習 A 1.)

The た-form is made by changing て and で of the て-form into た and だ respectively.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>て-form</th>
<th>た-form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>かいて</td>
<td>かいた</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>のんで</td>
<td>のんだ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>たべて</td>
<td>たべた</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>きて</td>
<td>きた</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>して</td>
<td>したら</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. [V た-form ことがあります] have the experience of V-ing

This sentence pattern is used to describe what one has experienced in the past. This is basically the same sentence as わたしは Nが あります which you learned in Lesson 9. The content of one's experience is expressed by the nominalized phrase V た-form こと.

① 馬に乗ったことがあります。 I have ridden a horse.
Note that it is, therefore, different from a sentence which merely states the fact that one did something at a certain time in the past.

② 去年北海道で馬に乗りました。 I rode a horse in Hokkaido last year.

3. [V た-form り、V た-form りします] V...and V..., and so on

You learned an expression for referring to a few things and persons among many (〜や〜[など]) in Lesson 10. The sentences learned here are used in referring to some actions among many other actions. The tense of this sentence pattern is shown at the end of the sentence.

③ 日曜日はテニスをしたり、映画を見たりします。 On Sundays I play tennis, see a movie and so on.

④ 日曜日はテニスをしたり、映画を見たりしました。 Last Sunday I played tennis, saw a movie and so on.

[Note] Make sure that you don’t confuse the meaning of this sentence pattern with that of the て-form sentence (⑤) which you learned in Lesson 16.

⑤ 日曜日はテニスをして、映画を見ました。 Last Sunday I played tennis and then saw a movie.
In ⑤ it is clear that seeing a movie took place after playing tennis. In ④ there is no time relation between the two activities. These activities are mentioned as example activities among the activities done on Sunday to imply that one did other activities besides them. And it is not natural that actions usually done by everybody every day such as getting up in the morning, taking meals, going to bed at night, etc., are mentioned.

4. なります means “become” and indicates changes in a state or condition.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>番号</th>
<th>原文</th>
<th>日文</th>
<th>含义</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>寒い</td>
<td>寒くなります</td>
<td>get cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>元気 [な]</td>
<td>元気になります</td>
<td>get well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>25歳</td>
<td>25歳になります</td>
<td>become 25 years old</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. そうです

そうです是 used when you agree or sympathize with what your partner in conversation said. そうです with a falling intonation is a similar expression to this (see Lesson 2, 6). そうですか(？) is, however, an expression of your conviction or exclamation after getting information which was unknown to you, while そうです is used to express your agreement or sympathy with your partner in conversation when he/she refers to something you agree with or already know.

| 9    | 寒くなりましたね。 | It's got cold, hasn’t it? |
|      | そうですね。     | ...Yes, it has. |
I. Vocabulary

いらっしゃる I 要ります need, require [a visa]
[ビザが～]
しらべます II 調べます check, investigate
なおします I 直します repair, correct
しゅうりします III 修理します repair
でんわします III 電話します phone

ぼく 僕 I (an informal equivalent of わたし used by men)
きみ 君 you (an informal equivalent of あなた used by men)
～くん ～君 Mr. (an informal equivalent of 〜さん used by men)

うん yes (an informal equivalent of はい)
ううん no (an informal equivalent of いいえ)

サラリーマン salaried worker, office worker

ことば word, language
ぶっか 物価 commodity prices
さもの 着物 kimono (traditional Japanese attire)

ビザ visa

はじめ 初め the beginning
おわり 終わり the end

こっち this way, this place (an informal equivalent of こちら)
そっち this way, that place (an informal equivalent of そちら)
あっち this way, that place over there (an informal equivalent of あちら)
どっち which one (between two things), which way, where (an informal equivalent of どちら)
このあいだ
みんなで
～けど

この間
the other day
all together
～, but (an informal equivalent of が)

＜会話＞
国へ帰るの？
どうするの？
どうしようかな。
よかったら
いろいろ

Are you going back to your country?
What will you do?
What shall I do?
if you like
various
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns
1. Mr. Santos did not come to the party.
2. Things are expensive in Japan.
3. The sea around Okinawa was beautiful.
4. Today is my birthday.

Example Sentences
1. Will you have some ice cream?
   ⋯Yes, I will.
2. Do you have any scissors?
   ⋯No, I don’t.
3. Did you see Ms. Kimura yesterday?
   ⋯No, I didn’t.
4. Shall we go to Kyoto all together tomorrow?
   ⋯Yes. That sounds nice.
5. Is the curry delicious?
   ⋯Yes, it is hot, but delicious.
6. Are you free now?
   ⋯Yes, I am. Why?
   Give me a hand, please.
7. Do you have a dictionary?
   ⋯No, I don’t.

Conversation

What will you do for the summer vacation?

Kobayashi: Are you going home for the summer vacation?
Thawaphon: No, I won’t. Though I want to....
           What about you, Mr. Kobayashi?
Kobayashi: Well, what shall I do?
           Have you climbed Mt. Fuji, Mr. Thawaphon?
Thawaphon: No, I haven’t.
Kobayashi: Then, if you’d like, shall we go together?
Thawaphon: Yes, okay. When?
Kobayashi: How about the beginning of August?
Thawaphon: Sounds good.
Kobayashi: Then, I will check up on various things and call you later.
Thawaphon: Thanks. I’ll be waiting.
III. Reference Words & Information

人の呼び方     HOW TO ADDRESS PEOPLE

“Taro, Hanako!!”

“Dear, do you know today is
Taro’s birthday?”

In families, people call each other from the viewpoint of the youngest of the family. A parent calls his/her eldest son or daughter “おにいちゃん”
(elder brother) or “おねえちゃん” (elder sister) respectively, standing
in the position of his/her younger sister or brother.

When parents talk in the presence of their children, the husband calls
his wife “おかあさん” or “ママ” (mother), and the wife, her husband
“おとうさん” or “パパ” (father). This practice, however, has been
changing recently, and the number of couples who call each other by
their names is increasing.

“Mr. Matsumoto, may I
have your signature?”

“The necktie suits you
very much, sir (ma’am)”

“Doctor, I have a
stomachache.”

In society, people call each other by the names of their role in the group
to which they belong. At work, a subordinate calls his boss by his job
title. At shops a shop assistant calls his/her customer “おきゃくさま”
(Mr./Ms. customer). Doctors are called “せんせい” (teacher) by their
patients.
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. Polite style and plain style

Japanese language has two styles of speech: polite style and plain style.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>polite style</th>
<th>plain style</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>あした 東京へ 行きます。</td>
<td>あした 東京へ 行く。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I will go to Tokyo tomorrow.</td>
<td>I will go to Tokyo tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>毎日 忙しいです。</td>
<td>毎日 忙しい。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am busy every day.</td>
<td>I am busy every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>相撲が 好きです。</td>
<td>相撲が 好きだ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I like sumo.</td>
<td>I like sumo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>富士山に 登りたいです。</td>
<td>富士山に 登りたい。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I want to climb Mt. Fuji.</td>
<td>I want to climb Mt. Fuji.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ドイツへ 行った ことが ありません。</td>
<td>ドイツへ 行った ことが ない。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have never been to Germany.</td>
<td>I have never been to Germany.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The predicates which are used in polite style sentences and accompanied by either です or ます are called the polite form, while the predicates used in plain style sentences are called the plain form. (See Main Textbook, Lesson 20, p. 166, 練習 A 1)

2. Proper use of the polite style or the plain style

1) The polite style can be used at anytime in any place and to anybody. Therefore, the polite style is used most commonly in daily conversation between adults who are not close friends. It is used when talking to a person one has met for the first time, to one’s superiors, or even to persons in a similar age group to whom one is not very close. The polite style may be chosen when one talks to a person who is younger or lower in rank yet not so close. The plain style is used when talking to one’s close friends, colleagues and family members.

Note that you need to be careful about how much politeness is needed, basing this on the age of your conversation partner and your type of relationship. If the plain style is used inappropriately, you could sound rough and impolite, so when you cannot tell the situation it is safer to use the polite style.

2) The plain style is commonly used in written work. Newspapers, books, theses and diaries are all written in the plain style. Most letters are written in the polite style.
3. Conversation in the plain style

1) Questions in the plain style generally omit the particle か, which denotes a question, and end with a rising intonation, such as のむ(ね).

① コーヒーを 飲む？(ね)  Do you want a coffee?
    うん、飲む。(ね)  Yes, I do.

2) In noun and な-adjective questions, だ, which is the plain form of です, is omitted. In an answer in the affirmative, ending the sentence with だ could sound too rough. You can either omit だ or add some sentence final particle to soften the tone of the sentence. Women seldom use だ.

② 今晚 無ければ。 Are you free tonight?
    うん、暇だ／暇よ。  Yes, I am. (used by men)
    うん、暇だ／暇よ。  Yes, I am. (used by women)
    うん、暇じゃない。  No, I am not.

(used by both men and women)

3) In the plain style, certain particles are often omitted if the meaning of the sentence is evident from the context.

③ ごはん [を] 食べる？  Will you take a meal?

④ あした 京都 [へ] 行かない？

Won’t you come to Kyoto tomorrow with me?

⑤ このりんご [は] おいしいね。 This apple is tasty, isn’t it?

⑥ そこに はさみ [が] ある？ Is there a pair of scissors there?

で、に、から、まで、と, etc., however, are not omitted because the meaning of the sentence may not be clear without them.

4) In the plain style, い of て-form いる is also often dropped.

⑦ 辞書、持って [い] る？  Do you have a dictionary?
    うん、持って [い] る。  Yes, I do.
    うん、持って [い] ない。  No, I don’t.

5) けど

けど has the same function as が, which is used to connect two sentences (see Lesson 8, 7 and Lesson 14, 7). It is often used in conversations.

⑧ そのカレーライス [は] おいしい？
    うん、辛いけど、おいしい。 Is that curry and rice tasty?
    うん、辛いけど、おいしい。
    Yes, it’s hot but tasty.

⑨ 相撲のチケット [が] あるけど いっしょに 行かない？
    うん、いいね。 I have tickets for sumo. Won’t you come with me.
    うん、いいね。 Yes, I do.

⑩ Sure.
I. Vocabulary

おもいます I  思います  think
いいいます I  言います  say
たります II  足ります  be enough, be sufficient
かちます I  勝ちます  win
まけます II  負けます  lose, be beaten
あります I  [a festival] be held, take place

[おまつりが 〜]  [お祭りが 〜]
やくに  たちます I 役に 立ちます  be useful

むだ[な]  wasteful
ふべん[な]  inconvenient
おなじ  同じ  the same
すごい  awful, great (expresses astonishment or admiration)

しゅしょう  首相  prime minister
だいたうりょう  大統領  president

せいじ  政治  politics
ニュース  news
スピーチ  speech (〜を します: make a speech)
しあい  game, match
アルバイト  side job (〜を します: work part time)
いけん  意見  opinion

[お]はななし  [お]話  talk, speech, what one says, story (〜を します: talk, tell a story)

ユーモア  humor
むだ  waste
デザイン  design

こうつう  交通  transportation, traffic
ラッシュ  rush hour
さいきん
たぶん
きっと
はんとうに
そんなに

最近
probably, perhaps, maybe
surely
really
not so much (used with negatives)

～に ついて
about ～, concerning ～

しかたが ありません。
There is no other choice./It can't be helped.

【会話】
しばらくですね。
It's been a long time (since I last saw you)./Long time no see.

～でも 飲みませんか。
How about drinking ～ or something?

見ないと……。
I've got to watch it.

もちろん
of course

カンガルー
kangaroo
キャプテン・クック
Captain James Cook (1728 – 79)
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns
1. I think it will rain tomorrow.
2. The prime minister said that he would go to the U.S.A. next month.

Example Sentences
1. Which is more important, work or family?
   · · · I think both are important.
2. What do you think of Japan?
   · · · I think things are expensive in Japan.
3. Where is Mr. Miller?
   · · · I think he is in the meeting room.
4. Does Mr. Miller know this news?
   · · · No, I don’t think he does.
   He was on a business trip.
5. Has little Teresa fallen asleep yet?
   · · · Yes, I think she has.
6. Do you pray before meals?
   · · · No, we don’t, but we say “Itadakimasu.”
7. Did you say something in the meeting?
   · · · Yes. I said that a lot of photocopying had been wastefully done.
8. In July there will be a festival in Kyoto, won’t there?
   · · · Yes, there will be.

Conversation

I think so, too

Matsumoto: Mr. Santos, it’s been a long time.
Santos: Mr. Matsumoto, how are you?
Matsumoto: I’m fine. How about going for a beer or something?
Santos: That sounds good.

Santos: There will be a soccer game between Japan and Brazil from ten tonight.
Matsumoto: Yes, there will. I must be sure to watch it.
Which team do you think will win?
Santos: Of course, Brazil.
Matsumoto: But I tell you recently Japan have got a lot better.
Santos: I think so, too....
Oh, it’s time that we went home.
Matsumoto: Yes, it is. Let’s go home.
### III. Reference Words & Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>国</td>
<td>nation</td>
<td>prime minister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>都道府県</td>
<td>prefecture</td>
<td>governor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>市</td>
<td>city</td>
<td>mayor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>町</td>
<td>town</td>
<td>town headman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>村</td>
<td>village</td>
<td>village headman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>大学</td>
<td>university</td>
<td>president</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>高等学校</td>
<td>senior high school</td>
<td>principal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>中学校</td>
<td>junior high school</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>小学校</td>
<td>elementary school</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>幼稚園</td>
<td>kindergarten</td>
<td>director</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Company Role</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>会社</td>
<td>company</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>会長</td>
<td>chairman</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>社長</td>
<td>president</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>重役</td>
<td>director</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>部長</td>
<td>department chief</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>課長</td>
<td>section chief</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>銀行</td>
<td>bank</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>頭取</td>
<td>president</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>支店長</td>
<td>branch manager</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Public Place</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>駅</td>
<td>station</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>駅長</td>
<td>stationmaster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>病院</td>
<td>hospital</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>院長</td>
<td>director of hospital</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>部長</td>
<td>department chief</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>婦長</td>
<td>head nurse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>警察</td>
<td>police station</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>署長</td>
<td>chief</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. plain form と 思います I think that...

The ideas or information expressed with おもいます are indicated by the particle と.

1) When expressing conjecture
   ① あした 雨が 降ると 思います。 I think it will rain tomorrow.
   ② テレサちゃんは もう 寝たと 思います。
       I think Teresa has already gone to bed.

When the content of conjecture is negative in nature, make the sentence before と negative.
   ③ ミラーさんは この ニュースを 知って いますか。
       …いいえ、たぶん 知らないと 思います。
       Does Mr. Miller know this news?
       …No, I don’t think he does.

2) When expressing one’s opinion
   ④ 日本は 物価が 高いと 思います。
       I think that prices are high in Japan.

The expression 〜に ついて どう おもいますか is used to ask someone’s opinion on something by using おもいます. と is not necessary after どう.
   ⑤ 新しい 空港に ついて どう 思いますか。
       …きれいですが、ちょっと 交通が 不便だと 思います。
       What do you think of the new airport?
       …I think that it is clean but the access to it is not easy.

Agreement or disagreement with other people’s opinions can be expressed as follows.
   ⑥ A: ファックスは 便利ですね。
      B: わたしも そう 思います。
      C: わたしは そう[は] 思いません。
      A: Fax machines are convenient, aren’t they?
      B: I think so, too.
      C: I don’t think so.

2. “S” plain form と 言います say...

The content expressed with いいます is indicated by the particle と.

1) When quoting directly what someone says or said, repeat exactly what they say as in the following structure.
   ⑦ 寝る まえに 「お休みなさい」と 言います。
       We say “Good night” before going to bed.

   ⑧ ミラーさんは 「来週 東京へ 出張します」と 言いました。
       Mr. Miller said “I will go to Tokyo on a business trip next week.”
2) When quoting indirectly what someone says or said, the plain form is used before と. The tense of the quoted sentence is not affected by the tense of the main sentence.

⑨ミラーさんは来週東京へ出張すると言いました。
Mr. Miller said that he would go to Tokyo on a business trip next week.

3. い-adj | plain form でしよう？
   な-adj | plain form で〜だ

When the speaker expects that the listener has some knowledge on the topic being discussed and that the listener will agree with the speaker’s view, でしようと is said with a rising intonation to confirm the listener’s agreement.

⑩あしたパーティーに行くでしよう？
…ええ、行きます。
You are going to the party tomorrow, aren’t you?
…Yes, I am.

⑪北海道は寒かったでしよう？It was cold in Hokkaido, wasn’t it?
…いいえ、そんなに寒くなかったです。…No, it wasn’t that cold.

4. N₁(place)で N₂があります

When N₂ expresses such events as a party, concert, festival, incident, disaster and so on, あります means “to take place” or “to be held.”

⑫東京で日本とブラジルのサッカーの試合があります。
A football game between Japan and Brazil will be held in Tokyo.

5. N(occasion)で

When some action takes place on a certain occasion, that occasion is followed by で。

⑬会議で何か意見を言いましたか。
Did you give your opinion at the meeting?

6. Nでも V

でも is used to give an example out of things of the same kind (drinks in the case of ⑭) when one encourages or advises someone to do something or when one makes a suggestion.

⑭ちょっとビールでも飲みませんか。
Shall we drink beer or something?

7. Vない-form ないと……

This expression is made by omitting いけません from Vない-form ないといけません. Vない-form ないといけません is similar to Vない-form なければならない なりません which you learned in Lesson 17.

⑮もう帰らないと……。I have to go home now.
Lesson 22

I. Vocabulary

さымиす Ⅱ さのす  
[シャツを〜]  
はさいます Ⅰ  
[くつを〜]  [靴を〜]  
かぶります Ⅰ  
[ぼうしを〜]  [帽子を〜]  
かけます Ⅱ  
[めがねを〜]  [眼鏡を〜]  
うまれます Ⅱ  
生まれます  
put on [a shirt, etc.]  
put on [shoes, trousers, etc.]  
put on [a hat, etc.]  
put on [glasses]  
be born  

core  
suit  
sweater  
hat, cap  
glasses  

よく  
often  

おめでとうございます。  
Congratulations. (used on birthdays, at weddings, New Year’s Day, etc.)
こちら
家賃
うーん。
ダイニングキッチン
和室
押し入れ
布団
アパート

this (polite equivalent of これ)
house rent
Let me see.
kitchen with a dining area
Japanese-style room
Japanese-style closet
Japanese-style mattress and quilt
apartment

パリ
万里の長城
余暇開発センター
レジャー白書

Paris
the Great Wall of China
Center for Developing Leisure Activities
white paper on leisure
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns

1. This is a cake Mr. Miller made.
2. That man who is over there is Mr. Miller.
3. I have forgotten the words I learned yesterday.
4. I have no time to go shopping.

Example Sentences

1. This is a photo I took on the Great Wall of China.  
   …Is it? It is superb, isn’t it?
2. Which is the picture Ms. Karina drew?  
   …It is that one. That picture of the sea.
3. Who is that woman wearing the kimono?  
   …That is Ms. Kimura.
4. Mr. Yanada, where did you first meet your wife?  
   …It was Osaka Castle.
5. How was the concert you went to with Ms. Kimura?  
   …It was very good.
6. What’s wrong with you?  
   …I have lost the umbrella I bought yesterday.
7. What kind of house do you want?  
   …I want a house that has a big garden.
8. Would you like to go for a drink this evening?  
   …I am sorry, but this evening I have promised to meet a friend.

Conversation

What kind of apartment would you like?

Real estate agent: How about this one?  
The rent is 80,000 yen.

Wang: Ummmm. It’s far from the station.

Agent: Then how about this one?  
This one’s convenient. It’s a three-minute walk from the station.

Wang: Oh.  
A kitchen-dining room, a Japanese-style room, and….  
Excuse me. What is this?

Agent: It’s an “oshiire.”  
It’s a place to put “futon” in.

Wang: I see.  
Can I take a look at this apartment today?

Agent: Yes. Shall we go now?

Wang: Yes, please.
### III. Reference Words & Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preferred</th>
<th>Name (Japanese/English)</th>
<th>Image</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>衣服</td>
<td>CLOTHES</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>スーツ</td>
<td>suit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ワンピース</td>
<td>one-piece dress</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>上着</td>
<td>jacket</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ズボン/パンツ</td>
<td>trousers/pants</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ジーンズ</td>
<td>jeans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>スカート</td>
<td>skirt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ブラウス</td>
<td>blouse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ワイシャツ</td>
<td>[white] shirt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>セーター</td>
<td>sweater</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>マフラー</td>
<td>muffler</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>手袋</td>
<td>gloves</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>下着</td>
<td>underwear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>くつした</td>
<td>socks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>パンスト</td>
<td>panty hose, tights</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>着物</td>
<td>kimono</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>オーバーコート</td>
<td>overcoat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>レインコート</td>
<td>raincoat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ネクタイ</td>
<td>necktie</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ベルト</td>
<td>belt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ハイヒール</td>
<td>high heels</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ブーツ</td>
<td>boots</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>運動靴</td>
<td>sneakers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ぞうり</td>
<td>zori</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>たび</td>
<td>tabi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. Noun modification

You learned how to modify nouns in Lesson 2 and Lesson 8.

ミラーさんのです うち Mr. Miller’s house (L. 2)
新しい うち a new house (L. 8)
きれいな うち a beautiful house (L. 8)

In Japanese, whatever modifies a word, whether it's a word or a sentence, it always comes before the word to be modified. Here you learn another way to modify nouns.

2. Noun modification by sentences

1) The predicate of the sentence which modifies a noun is in the plain form.

In the case of な-adjective sentences, 〜だ becomes 〜な. In the case of noun sentences 〜だ becomes 〜の.

① 京都へ
行く 人 who goes
行かない 人 who does not go
行った 人 who went
行かなかった 人 who did not go

a person who goes to Kyoto
a person who is tall and has black hair
a person who is kind and pretty
a person who is 65 years old

2) Nouns, which are various elements of the sentence, are picked out of it and can be modified by it.

② わたしは 先週 映画を 見ました →わたしが 先週 見た 映画
I saw a movie last week →the movie that I saw last week

③ わたしは 先週 映画を 見ました
Mr. Wang works at a hospital →the hospital where Mr. Wang works

④ わたしは 映画を 見ました →わたしが 映画を 見た
I will meet a friend tomorrow →the friend whom I will meet tomorrow

When the nouns underlined in ②, ③ and ④ are modified, the particles を, で, and に attached to them respectively are unnecessary.
3) The noun modified by a sentence ("the house where Mr. Miller lived" in the example sentences below) can be used in various parts of a sentence.

⑤ これは ミラーさんが 住んで いた うちです。
This is the house where Mr. Miller lived.

⑥ ミラーさんが 住んで いた うちは 古いです。
The house where Mr. Miller lived is old.

⑦ ミラーさんが 住んで いた うちを 買いました。
I bought the house where Mr. Miller lived.

⑧ わたしは ミラーさんが 住んで いた うちが 好きです。
I like the house where Mr. Miller lived.

⑨ ミラーさんが 住んで いた うちに 猫が いました。
There was a cat in the house where Mr. Miller lived.

⑩ ミラーさんが 住んで いた うちへ 行った ことが あります。
I have been to the house where Mr. Miller lived.

3. が

When a sentence modifies a noun, the subject in the sentence is indicated by が．

ミラーさんは ケーキを 作りました。
Mr. Miller baked a cake.

⑪ これは ミラーさんが 作った ケーキです。
This is the cake which Mr. Miller baked.

⑫ わたしは カリナさんが かいた 絵が 好きです。
I like the picture that Ms. Karina drew.

⑬ [あなたは] 彼が 生まれた 所を 知って いますか。
Do you know the place where he was born?

4. V dictionary form 時間／約束／用事

When expressing the time for doing some activity, put the dictionary form of the action before じかん．

⑭ わたしは 朝ごはんを 食べる 時間が ありません。
I have no time to eat breakfast.

You can also say the content of the arrangement (appointment), etc., by putting the dictionary form of that action before やくそく, etc.

⑮ わたしは 友達と 映画を 見る 約束が あります。
I have an arrangement to see a movie with a friend of mine.

⑯ きょうは 市役所へ 行く 用事が あります。
I have something to do at the city hall today.
Lesson 23

I. Vocabulary

ききます Ⅰ
[せんせいに ～]
先生に ～
ask [the teacher]

まわします Ⅰ
回します
turn

ひきます Ⅰ
引きます
pull

かえます Ⅱ
変えます
change

さわります Ⅰ
触ります
touch [a door]

[ドアに ～]

でます Ⅱ
出ます
[change] come out

[おつりが ～]
[お釣りが ～]

うごきます Ⅰ
動きます
[a watch] move, work

[とけいが ～]
[時計が ～]

あるきます Ⅰ
歩きます
walk [along a road]

[みちを ～]
[道を ～]

わたります Ⅰ
渡ります
cross [a bridge]

[はしを ～]
[橋を ～]

きを つけます Ⅱ
気を つけます
pay attention [to cars], take care

[くるまに ～]
[車に ～]

ひっこしします Ⅲ
引っ越します
move (house)

denkiya
～や
電気屋
～屋
person of ～ shop

サイズ
おと
音
size
sound

さかい
つまみ
機械
machine

こしょう
故障
breakdown (～します：break down)

みち
道
road, way

こうさてん
交差点
crossroad

しんごう
信号
traffic light

かど
角
corner

はし
橋
bridge

ちゅうしゃじょう
駐車場
parking lot, car park
-め -目 the -th (indicating order)

[お]しょうがつ [お]正月 New Year’s Day

ごちそうさま[でした]。 That was delicious. (said after eating or drinking)

バイ会話

建物 building

外国人登録証 alien registration card

聖徳太子 Prince Shotoku (574 – 622)

法隆寺 Horyuji Temple, a temple in Nara

元気茶 fictitious tea

本田駅 fictitious station

図書館前 fictitious bus stop
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns
1. When you borrow books from the library, you need a card.
2. Push this button, and change will come out.

Example Sentences
1. Do you often watch TV?
   •••Well, I watch it when there is a baseball game on.
2. What do you do when there is nothing in the refrigerator?
   •••I go out and eat something at a nearby restaurant.
3. Did you turn off the air conditioner when you left the meeting room?
   •••I am sorry, I forgot.
4. Where do you buy your clothes and shoes, Mr. Santos?
   •••I buy them in my country when I go back on summer vacation or New Year vacation.
   Because the things in Japan are small for me.
5. What is that?
   •••It’s “Genki-cha.” I take this when I’m not in good shape.
6. Won’t you come to my house when you are free?
   •••Thank you. I would love to.
7. Did you work part-time when you were a student?
   •••Yes. I sometimes did.
8. The volume is low, isn’t it?
   •••Turn this knob to the right, and the volume will go up.
9. Excuse me. Where is the City Hall?
   •••Go straight down this road, and you will find it on your left.

Conversation

How can I get there?

Librarian: Hello. This is Midori Library.
Karina: Er, could you tell me how to get there?
Librarian: Take a No.12 bus from Honda Station, and get off at Toshokan-mae. It’s the third stop.
Karina: The third stop, right?
Librarian: Yes. When you get off the bus, you will see a park in front of you.
   Our library is the white building in the park.
Karina: I see.
Is anything required when I borrow books?
Librarian: Are you a foreigner?
Karina: Yes, I am.
Librarian: Then, please bring your alien registration card.
Karina: Yes, I will. Thank you very much.
# III. Reference Words & Information

## 道路・交通  ROAD & TRAFFIC

| 1. 歩道   | sidewalk, pavement  |
| 2. 車道   | road               |
| 3. 高速道路 | expressway, motorway |
| 4. 通り   | street             |
| 5. 交差点 | crossing           |
| 6. 横断歩道 | pedestrian crossing |
| 7. 歩道橋 | pedestrian bridge  |
| 8. 角     | corner             |
| 9. 信号   | traffic light      |
| 10. 坡     | slope              |
| 11. 踏切   | railroad crossing  |
| 12. ガソリンスタンド | gas station |

![Traffic signs diagram](image)

- 止まれ: stop
- 進入禁止: no entry
- 一方通行: one way
- 駐車禁止: no parking
- 右折禁止: no turning right
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. **V dictionary form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vない-form</th>
<th>とき、〜</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| いい-adj (〜い) | When..., ...
| な-adjな |

とき connects two sentences and expresses the time when the state or action described in the main sentence exists or occurs. As shown in the table above, the forms of verbs, い-adjectives, な-adjectives and nouns connected to とき are the same as the forms when modifying nouns.

① 図書館で本を借りるとき、カードが必要になります。
   When you borrow books from the library, you need a card.

② 使い方がわからないとき、わたしに聞いてください。
   When you don't know how to use it, ask me.

③ 体調が悪いとき、「元気茶」を飲みます。
   When I'm not in good shape, I drink Genki-cha.

④ 暇なとき、うちへ遊びに来ませんか。
   Won't you come to my place when you are free?

⑤ 妻が病気のとき、会社を休みます。
   When my wife is sick, I take a day off work.

⑥ 若いとき、あまり勉強しなかったです。
   When I was young, I did not study much.

⑦ 子どものとき、よく川で泳ぎました。
   I used to swim in a river when I was a child.

The tense of adjective sentences and noun sentences which modify とき is not affected by the tense of the main sentence (see ⑥ and ⑦).

2. **V dictionary form**

| Vた-form | とき、〜 |

When the dictionary form of the predicate is put before とき it indicates the non-completion of the action, and when the た-form of the predicate is put before とき it indicates the completion of the action.

⑧ 国へ帰るとき、かばんを買いました。
   I bought a bag when I went back to my country.

⑨ 国へ帰ったとき、かばんを買いました。
   I bought a bag when I went back to my country.

In ⑧, かえる indicates that at the time being referred to the action had not been completed, that the speaker had not reached his/her country yet and that he/she bought a bag somewhere on his/her way there (Japan is included). In ⑨, かえった indicates that the action was completed and the speaker bought a bag after arriving in his/her country.
3. **V dictionary form と、〜...**, then (inevitably)...

When expressing the situation where, as a result of a certain action, another action or matter inevitably happens, と is used to connect the sentences.

10. このボタンを押すと、お釣りが出ます。
   Press this button, and the change will come out.

11. これを回すと、音が大きくなります。
   Turn this, and the volume will go up.

12. 右へ曲がると、郵便局があります。
   Turn to the right, and you will find the post office.

Expressions of one’s will, hope, invitation or request cannot be used in the sentence which follows 〜と.

- 映画を見に行きます。 (will)
- 映画を見に行きたいです。 (hope)
- 映画を見に行きませんか。 (invitation)
- ちょっと手伝ってください。 (request)

In those cases, the conditional expression 〜たら is used instead of 〜と (see Lesson 25).

4. **N が adjective / V**

You learned in Lesson 14 that the subject is indicated by が when describing a natural phenomenon. When describing a state or a scene as it is, the subject is also indicated by が.

13. 音が小さいです。
   The volume is low.

14. 電気が明るくなりました。
   The light became brighter.

15. このボタンを押すと、切符が出ます。
   Press this button, and a ticket will come out.

5. **N(place) を V (verb of movement)**

The particle を is used to denote the place where a person or a thing passes. The verb of movement such as さんぽします, わたります, るきます, etc. are used in this pattern.

16. 公園を散歩します。 I take a walk in the park. (L. 13)

17. 道を渡ります。 I cross the road.

18. 交差点を右へ曲がります。 I turn to the right at the intersection.
I. Vocabulary

くれます II
give (me)
つれていきます 連れて 行きます
take (someone)
つれて きます 連れて 來ます
bring (someone)
おくります 送ります
escort [someone], go with
[ひとを〜] [人を〜]
しょうかいします III 紹介します
introduce
あんないします III 案内します
show around, show the way
せつめいします III 説明します
explain
いれます II
make [coffee]
[コーヒーを〜]

おじいさん／おじいちゃん
grandfather, old man
おばあさん／おばあちゃん
grandmother, old woman

じゅんび
準備
preparation (〜します: prepare)

いみ
意味
meaning

[お]きし
[お]菓子
sweets, snacks

ぜんぶ
全部
all

じぶんで
自分で
by oneself
besides
station wagon
box lunch

Mother’s Day
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns
1. Ms. Sato gave me a Christmas card.
3. I was told the telephone number of the hospital by Mr. Yamada.
4. My mother sent me a sweater.

Example Sentences
1. Do you like your grandmother, Taro?
   ⋯Yes, I do. She always gives me some sweets.
2. This is very delicious wine.
   ⋯Yes. Ms. Sato gave it to me. It's French wine.
3. Taro, what will you do for your mother on Mother's Day?
   ⋯I will play the piano for her.
4. Mr. Miller, did you cook all the dishes for the party yesterday by yourself?
   ⋯No, Mr. Wang helped me.
5. Did you go by train?
   ⋯No, Mr. Yamada drove me.

Conversation

Will you help me?

Karina: Mr. Wang, you are moving house tomorrow, aren't you?
   Shall I come to help you?
Wang: Thank you.
   Well, then, will you come around 9 o'clock?
Karina: Who else will come to help you?
Wang: Mr. Yamada and Mr. Miller are coming.
Karina: What about a car?
Wang: Mr. Yamada will lend me his station wagon.
Karina: What about lunch?
Wang: Well....
Karina: Shall I bring lunch?
Wang: Thank you. Please.
Karina: Then see you tomorrow.
III. Reference Words & Information

EXCHANGE OF PRESENTS

お年玉  small gift of money given by parents and relatives to children on New Year’s Day
入学祝い gift celebrating admission to schools
卒業祝い graduation gift (money, stationery, book, etc.)
結婚祝い wedding gift (money, household goods, etc.)
出産祝い gift celebrating a birth (baby clothes, toys, etc.)

お中元 [Jul. or Aug.]  gift for a person whose care you are under, e.g., doctor, teacher, boss, etc. (food, etc.)
お歳暮 [Dec.]

お香典  condolence money
お見舞い present given when visiting a sick person (flowers, fruits, etc.)

熨斗袋  Special Envelope for Gift of Money
There are several kinds of special envelopes called NOSHIBUKURO. According to the occasion, a suitable one should be chosen.

for weddings (with red and white, or gold and silver ribbon)
for celebrations other than weddings (with red and white, or gold and silver ribbon)
for funerals (with black and white ribbon)
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. くれます

You learned that あげます means "give" in Lesson 7. This verb cannot be used when somebody else gives something to the speaker or the speaker's family, etc. (×さとうさんは わたしに クリスマスカードを あげました). In this case くれます is used.

① わたしは 佐藤さんに 花を あげました。
I gave flowers to Ms. Sato.

② 佐藤さんは わたしに クリスマスカードを くれました。
Ms. Sato gave me a Christmas card.

③ 佐藤さんは 姉に お菓子を くれました。
Ms. Sato gave candies to my younger sister.

2. V で-form あげます

あげます, もらいます and くれます are also used to refer to the giving and receiving of actions as well as those of things. They indicate who is doing that act for whom, while also expressing a sense of goodwill or gratitude. In this case, the act is expressed by the で-form.

1) V で-form あげます

V で-form あげます indicates that one does something for somebody with a sense of goodwill.

④ わたしは 木村さんに 本を 貸して あげました。

When the speaker is the actor and the listener is the receiver of the act, this expression could give the impression that the speaker is being patronizing. You are, therefore, advised to avoid using this expression directly to someone whom you do not know very well or who is senior or superior to you. You may use it to someone with whom you have a very close, friendly relationship. So, when you offer assistance to someone who is not very close, V ます-formましょうか (see Lesson 14, 6) is used.

⑤ タクシーを 呼びましょうか。
Shall I call a taxi for you?  (L. 14)

⑥ 手伝いましょうか。
May I help you?  (L. 14)
2) で-form もらいます

7. わたしば 山田さんに 図書館の 電話番号を 教えて もらいました。
Mr. Yamada told me the telephone number of the library.
This expression conveys a sense of gratitude on the part of those who receive
a favor.

3) で-form くれます

8. 母は [わたしに] セーターを 送って くれました。
My mother sent me a sweater.
Like で-form もらいます, this expression also conveys a sense of gratitude
on the part of those who receive a favor. The difference is that で-form
もらいます has the receiver of the act as the subject of the sentence, while
で-form くれます has the actor as the subject of the sentence, implying the
actor (the subject) voluntarily takes the action. The receiver of the act in the
latter case is often the speaker andわたし (the receiver) に is often omitted.

3. が V

9. すてきな ネクタイですね。 That's a nice tie, isn't it?
ええ、佐藤さんが くれました。 Yes. Ms. Sato gave it to me.
You present a topic, saying すてきな ネクタイですね. Responding to it,
your partner in conversation gives a piece of information on the topic which is
unknown to you, [この ネクタイは] さとうさんが くれました. The
subject of the sentence giving new information is indicated by が.

4. Interrogative が V

You learned that when the subject is questioned, it is indicated by が in
あります／います sentences (Lesson 10) and adjective sentences (Lesson
12). This is also the case for verb sentences.

10. だれが 手伝いに 行きますか。 Who will go to give him a hand?
かりーナさんが 行きます。 Ms. Karina will.
I. Vocabulary

かんがえます Ⅱ 考えます  
think, consider
つきます Ⅰ 着きます  
arrive [at the station]
[えきに ～] [駅に ～]
りゅうがくします Ⅲ 留学します  
study abroad
とります Ⅰ 取ります  
grow old
[としを ～] [年を ～]

いなか  
countryside, hometown
たいしかん  
embassy
グループ  
group
チャンス  
chance

おく  
hundred million

もし [～たら]  
if ～
いくら [～ても]  
however ～, even if ～
転勤

こと
一杯 飲みましょう。
[いろいろ] お世話に なりました。

頑張ります I
どうぞ お元気で。

transfer (〜します: be transferred to another office)
thing, matter (〜の こと: thing about 〜)
Let's have a drink together.
Thank you for everything you have done for me.
do one's best
Best of luck. (said when expecting a long separation)
II. Translation

Sentence Patterns
1. If it rains, I will not go out.
2. Even if it rains, I will go out.

Example Sentences
1. If you had a hundred million yen, what would you like to do?  
   …I would want to build a computer software company.
2. What will you do if your friend doesn’t come at the time he promised?  
   …I will go home immediately.
3. That new shoe shop has a lot of good shoes.  
   …Does it? If their prices are reasonable, I would like to buy some.
4. Do I have to submit the report by tomorrow?  
   …No. If it’s not possible, submit it on Friday.
5. Have you thought of a name for your baby yet?  
   …Yes. If it is a boy, he will be named “Hikaru,” and if it is a girl, she  
   will be named “Aya.”
6. Will you start work straightaway after you graduate from university?  
   …No, I want to travel to various countries for about one year.
7. Excuse me, ma’am. But I don’t understand the meaning of this word.  
   …Did you check it in the dictionary?  
   Yes, I did. I still don’t get it.
8. Japanese people are fond of traveling in groups, aren’t they?  
   …Yes, they are, because it is economical.  
   No matter how economical it is, I don’t like group tours.

Conversation

Thank you for having been kind to me

Yamada: Congratulations! You are going to be transferred.
Miller: Thank you.
Kimura: When you leave for Tokyo, we will miss you.  
   Don’t forget about Osaka after you go to Tokyo.
Miller: Of course. Ms. Kimura, if you have time, please come to  
   Tokyo.
Santos: Mr. Miller, when you come to Osaka, give me a call.  
   Let’s have a drink.
Miller: I’d love to.  
   Thank you very much, all of you, for having been kind to me.
Sato: Please take care of yourself and do your best.
Miller: Yes, I will do my best. Best of luck, all of you.
III. Reference Words & Information

人の一生 LIFE

- 0歳: 赤ちゃん (baby)
- 6歳: 子ども (child)
- 18歳: 青年 (youth)
- 30歳
- 40歳: 中年 (middle age)
- 60歳
- 70歳: 老人 (old age)

ベビーシッター nursery school
幼稚園 kindergarten
小学校 (6 years) elementary school
中学校 (3) junior high school
高等学校 (3) senior high school
大学 (4) 短大 (2) 大学院 (2~6) 大学 (大学院) junior college college of technical post graduate course education

学校を出ます graduate from school
就職します get a job
結婚します marry
子どもが生まれます have a child
(離婚します divorce) (再婚します marry again)
仕事をやめます retire
死にます die

Life Expectancy of the Japanese
men 77.01
women 83.59
(1996, Ministry of Health and Welfare)
IV. Grammar Explanation

1. **plain past formら、〜** If...

When ら is attached to the past tense plain form of verbs, adjectives, etc., it changes the preceding clause into a conditional expression. When a speaker wants to state his opinion, situation, request, etc., in the conditional, this pattern is used.

1. お金があったら、旅行します。
   If I had money, I would travel.
2. 時間がなかったら、テレビを見えません。
   If I don’t have time, I will not watch TV.
3. 安かったら、パソコンを買いたいです。
   If it’s inexpensive, I want to buy a personal computer.
4. 暇だったら、手伝ってください。
   If you are free, please give me a hand.
5. いい天気だったら、散歩しませんか。
   If it’s fine, won’t you take a walk with me?

2. **Vた-formら、〜** When...／After...

This pattern is used to express that a certain action will be done or a certain situation will appear when a matter, action or state which is sure to happen in the future has been completed or achieved. The main sentence is always in the present tense.

6. 10時にだったら、出かけましょう。
   Let’s go out when it gets to ten.
7. うちへ帰ったら、すぐシャワーを浴びます。
   I take a shower soon after I return home.

3. **Vで-form**
   い-adj（〜い）→〜くて
   な-adj [な] →で
   N で

   Even if...

This expression is used to present a reverse condition. Contrary to plain past formら、〜, this expression is used when an action which is expected to be taken or an event which is expected to happen naturally under the given circumstances does not materialize or a thing turns out in a way opposite to a socially accepted idea.
8. 雨が降っても、洗濯します。
   Even if it rains, I’ll do the laundry.
9. 安くても、わたしはグループ旅行が嫌いです。
   Even if group tours are inexpensive, I don’t like them.
10. 便利でも、パソコンを使いません。
    Even if a personal computer is useful, I won’t use it.
11. 日曜日でも、働きます。
    Even if it is Sunday, I will work.

4. もし and いくら

もし is used in a sentence in the plain past form to indicate beforehand that the sentence is going to present a condition, while いくら is used with ～ても(～でも) to do the same. もし implies that an emphasis is on the speaker’s supposition while いくら is meant to stress the degree of conditionality.

12. もし 1億円 あったら、いろいろな国を旅行したいです。
    If I had 100 million yen, I would want to travel in various countries.
13. いくら考えても、わかりません。
    No matter how much I think, I can’t understand this.
14. いくら高くても、買います。
    No matter how expensive it is, I will buy it.

5. が

As mentioned in Lesson 16, 4. [Note], the subject of a subordinate clause is indicated by が. In subordinate clauses using たら, ても, とき, と, まえに, etc., in addition to から, the subject is indicated by が, as shown below.

15. 友達が来ると、部屋を掃除します。
    I will clean my room before my friends come. (L. 18)
16. 妻が病気のとき、会社を休みます。
    When my wife is sick, I take a day off work. (L. 23)
17. 友達が約束の時間に来なかったら、どうしますか。
    If your friend doesn’t come on time, what will you do? (L. 25)
SUMMARY LESSON

I. Particles

1. [は]
   A: 1) I am Mike Miller. (Lesson 1)
       2) I get up at six in the morning. (4)
       3) Cherry blossoms are beautiful. (8)
   B: 1) What time is it now in New York? (4)
       2) On Sunday I went to Nara with a friend. (6)
       3) Tokyo Disneyland is in Chiba Prefecture. (10)
       4) Please send the data by fax. (17)

2. [も]
   A: 1) Maria is Brazilian, too. (1)
       2) Please send this parcel, too. (11)
       3) I like both. (12)
       4) I have been on a diet many times. (19)
   B: 1) I did not go anywhere. (5)
       2) I did not eat anything. (6)
       3) There was no one. (10)

3. [の]
   A: 1) That person is Mr. Miller of IMC. (1)
       2) This is a book on computers. (2)
       3) That is my umbrella. (2)
       4) This is a Japanese car. (3)
       5) Did you study last night? (4)
       6) How are your Japanese studies going? (8)
       7) There is a picture on the desk. (10)
       8) Please tell me how to read this Kanji. (14)
       9) I came from Bandung, Indonesia. (16)
   B: 1) This bag is Ms. Sato’s. (2)
       2) Where was this camera made?
          …In Japan. (3)
   C: Is there one a little bigger? (14)

4. [を]
   A: 1) I drink juice. (6)
       2) I am going to travel for a week. (11)
       3) I will pick up my child at two o’clock. (13)
B: 1) I took a day off work yesterday.  
   2) I leave home at eight every morning.  
   3) I get off the train at Kyoto.  
C: 1) I take a walk in a park every morning.  
   2) Please cross at that traffic signal.  
   3) Go straight along this street and you will find the station.  

5. [か]
   A: 1) I like Italian food.  
   2) Mr. Miller is good at cooking.  
   3) I understand Japanese a little.  
   4) Do you have any small change?  
   5) I have two children.  
   6) I want a personal computer.  
   7) Can you ski?  
   8) I need a tape recorder.  
B: 1) There is a man over there.  
   2) There is a picture on the desk.  
   3) There will be a festival in Kyoto next month.  
C: 1) Tokyo has a big population.  
   2) Mr. Santos is tall.  
   3) I have a sore throat.  
D: 1) Which is faster, a bus or a train?  
   ...A train is faster.  
   2) Baseball is the most interesting of all the sports.  
E: 1) It is raining now.  
   2) Touch this, and the water will come out.  
   3) The volume is low.  
F: 1) I am going to go and have a meal after the concert is over.  
   2) What will you do if your friend does not come on time?  
   3) When my wife is sick, I take a day off work.  
   4) Which is the picture that Ms. Karina drew?  
G: 1) Ms. Sato gave me wine.  
   2) Who paid for you?  

6. [に]
   A: 1) I get up at six o'clock in the morning.  
   2) I came to Japan on March 25th.  
B: 1) I gave some flowers to Ms. Kimura.  
   2) I write Christmas cards to my family and friends.
C: 1) I received a gift from Mr. Santos.  (7)
   2) I borrowed a book from a person in the company.  (7)
D: 1) There is a picture on the desk.  (10)
   2) My family is in New York.  (10)
   3) Maria lives in Osaka.  (15)
E: 1) I will meet a friend tomorrow.  (6)
   2) Have you already got accustomed to living in Japan?  (8)
   3) Let’s go in that coffee shop.  (13)
   4) Please sit here.  (15)
   5) I take a train from Umeda.  (16)
   6) Please write your name here.  (14)
   7) Touch this, and the water will come out.  (23)
F: 1) I play tennis once a week.  (11)
G: 1) I came to Japan to study economics.  (13)
   2) I will go to Kyoto for cherry blossom viewing.  (13)
H: 1) Teresa became ten.  (19)

7. [へ]
   1) I will go to Kyoto with a friend.  (5)
   2) I will go to France to study cooking.  (13)
   3) Please turn right at that traffic light.  (14)

8. [で]
A: 1) I go home by taxi.  (5)
   2) I send the data by fax.  (7)
   3) Do you write reports in Japanese?  (7)
B: 1) I buy a newspaper at the station.  (6)
   2) In July there is a festival in Kyoto.  (21)
C: 1) I like summer the best of the year.  (12)

9. [と]
A: 1) I came to Japan with my family.  (5)
   2) Ms. Sato is talking with the department chief in the meeting room.  (14)
B: 1) I have Saturdays and Sundays off.  (4)
   2) The book store is between a florist’s and a supermarket.  (10)
   3) Which is more interesting, football or baseball?  (12)
C: 1) I think it will rain tomorrow.  (21)
   2) The prime minister said that he would go to America next month.  (21)

10. [や]
   There are old letters, pictures and things in the box.  (10)
11. [から][まで]
   A: 1) I work from nine to five. (4)
       2) The bank is open from nine to three. (4)
       3) I worked until ten last night. (4)
   B: 1) Chili sauce is on the second rack from the bottom. (10)
       2) It takes four hours to fly from my country to Japan. (11)
       3) Shall I come and get you at the station? (14)

12. [までに]
   I have to return the books by Saturday. (17)

13. [より]
   China is bigger than Japan. (12)

14. [でも]
   Shall we drink a glass of beer or something? (21)

15. [か]
   A: 1) Is Mr. Santos Brazilian? (1)
       2) Is it a mechanical pencil or a ballpoint pen? (2)
       3) Shall we go and see a film together? (6)
   B: Excuse me. Where is Yunyu-ya store?
      ⋅⋅⋅Yunyu-ya store? It’s in that building. (10)
   C: Is this umbrella yours?
      ⋅⋅⋅No, it isn’t. It’s Mr. Schmidt’s.
      I see. (2)

16. [ね]
   1) I studied until twelve last night, too.
      ⋅⋅⋅That’s tough, isn’t it? (4)
   2) That spoon looks nice, doesn’t it? (7)
   3) Well, ⋅⋅⋅let me see, it’s 871-6813.
      ⋅⋅⋅871-6813, right? (4)
   4) You see the man over there. Who is he? (10)

17. [よ]
   Does this train go to Koshien?
   ⋅⋅⋅No. The next local train does. (5)
II. How to Use the Forms

1. [ます-form]
   ます-formませんか   Won’t you have some tea with me?  (Lesson 6)
   ます-formましょう   Let’s meet at five. (6)
   ます-formたいですか I want to buy a camera. (13)
   ます-formいきます   I go to see a movie. (13)
   ます-formましょうか Shall I call a taxi for you? (14)

2. [て-form]
   て-formください   Please lend me your ballpoint pen.  (14)
   て-formいます      Ms. Sato is now talking with Mr. Miller. (14)
   て-formも いいですか May I smoke? (15)
   て-formは いけません Don’t take photographs in the museum. (15)
   て-formから、～     After I finish work, I go swimming. (16)
   て-form、て-form、～ In the morning, I go jogging, take a shower, then go to the office. (16)
   て-formあげます     I lend a CD to Mr. Miller. (24)
   て-formもらいます  Ms. Sato took me to Osaka Castle. (24)
   て-formくれます     Mr. Yamada took me in his car. (24)

3. [ない-form]
   ない-formないでください Please do not take photographs here. (17)
   ない-formなければなりません You must show your passport. (17)
   ない-formなくてもいいです You don’t need to take off your shoes. (17)

4. [dictionary form]
   dictionary form ことができます I can play the piano. (18)
   dictionary form ことです My hobby is watching movies. (18)
   dictionary form まえに、～ I read a book before going to bed. (18)
   dictionary formと、～ Turn to the right, and you’ll find a post office. (23)

5. [た-form]
   た-form ことがあります I have been to Hokkaido. (19)
   た-formリ、た-formリします On my holidays I play tennis, take walks and so forth. (19)
6. [plain form]
plain formと おもいます
plain formと いいます
verb い- adjective な- adjective noun ～だ
verb plain form noun
I think that Mr. Miller has already gone home.(21)
I think that things are expensive in Japan.  (21)
I think that family is the most important thing. (21)
My brother said that he would return by ten. (21)
Tomorrow you will go to the party, won't you?(21)
The morning rush hours are terrible, aren't they? (21)
Personal computers are useful, aren't they? (21)
He is American, isn't he? (21)
This is the cake that I made. (22)

7. verb plain form
い- adjective な- adjective noun の
When I read a paper, I put on my glasses. (23)
When I am sleepy, I drink coffee. (23)
When I have time, I watch video tapes. (23)
When it rains, I take a taxi. (23)

8. plain form pastら、～
If I have a personal computer, it'll be convenient. (25)
If the personal computer is cheap, I will buy it. (25)
If it's simple to use, I will buy it. (25)
If it's fine, I'll take a walk. (25)

9. verb で-form
い- adjective ～くて も、～
な- adjective で noun で
Though I've checked in the dictionary, I don't understand its meaning. (25)
Even if personal computers are cheap, I won't buy one. (25)
Even if you don't like it, you should eat it. (25)
He works even on Sundays. (25)
III. Adverbs and Adverbial Expressions

1. みんな
The foreign teachers are all Americans. (Lesson 11)
ぜんぶ
I have finished all my homework. (24)
たくさん
I have a lot of work. (9)
とても
It is very cold in Beijing. (8)
よく
Mr. Wang understands English well. (9)
だいたい
Teresa understands most Hiragana. (9)
すこし
Maria understands Katakana a little. (9)
ちょっと
Let’s take a rest for a while. (6)
もうすこし
Don’t you have one a little bit smaller? (14)
もう
Make one more copy, please. (14)
ずっと
There are a lot more people in Tokyo than in New York. (12)
いちばん
I like tempura best of all Japanese dishes. (12)
Notebooks are on the top of that shelf. (10)

2. いつも
I always have lunch in the university dining hall. (6)
ときどき
I sometimes eat at a restaurant. (6)
よく
Mr. Miller often goes to coffee shops. (22)
はじめて
Yesterday I ate sushi for the first time. (12)
また
Please come again tomorrow. (14)
もういちど
Once again, please. (II)

3. いま
It is now ten past two. (4)
すぐ
Please send the report at once. (14)
もう
I have already bought my Shinkansen ticket. (7)
It’s eight o’clock now, isn’t it? (8)
まだ
Have you had lunch?
…No, not yet. (7)
これから
I’m going to take lunch from now. (7)
そろそろ
It is almost time for me to leave. (8)
あとで
I will come later. (14)
まず
First, push this button. (16)
つぎに
Next, insert the card. (16)
さいさん
Recently Japanese football teams have become stronger. (21)

4. じぶんで
I cooked all the dishes for the party by myself. (24)
ひとりで
I go to the hospital alone. (5)
みんなで
We will go to Kyoto all together tomorrow. (20)
いっしょに
Won’t you drink some beer with me? (6)
べつべつに
Please charge us separately. (13)
ぜんぶで
It is five hundred yen in all. (11)
Who will come to help you other than me? (24)
I’ll go home early. (9)
Please speak slowly. (14)
Have a good rest, today. (17)
It will get hotter and hotter from now on. (19)
Please go straight. (14)

5. あまり That dictionary is not very good. (8)
ぜんぜん I don’t understand Indonesian at all. (9)
なかなか You can hardly ever see horses in Japan. (18)
いちども I have never eaten sushi. (19)
ぜひ I am eager to go to Hokkaido. (18)
たぶん I think Mr. Miller probably doesn’t know. (21)
きっと I am sure it will be fine tomorrow. (21)
もし If I had one hundred million yen, I would like to form my own company. (25)
いくら However cheap group tours are, I don’t like them. (25)

6. とくに In that film, the father, especially, acted well. (15)
じつは I am on a diet actually. (19)
ほんとうに I think food really costs a lot in Japan. (21)
もちろん I think Brazil will win the game, of course. (21)
IV. Various Conjunctions

1. そして Subways in Tokyo are clean and convenient. (Lesson 8)
    ～で Nara is a quiet and beautiful city. (16)
    ～くて This personal computer is light and handy. (16)
    それから Send this by special delivery, please. And this parcel, too. (11)
    ～たり On holidays I play tennis, go on walks and so on. (19)
    ～が Excuse me, but lend me a ballpoint pen, please. (14)

2. それから I studied Japanese, and then saw a movie. (6)
    ～てから We dined at a restaurant after the concert was over. (16)
    ～て、～て In the morning I jog, take a shower, and go to the office. (16)
    ～まえに I write in my diary before going to bed. (18)
    ～とき When you borrow books from the library, you need a card. (23)

3. から I don’t go anywhere, because I don’t have the time. (9)
    ですから Today is my wife’s birthday. So I must go home early. (17)

4. ～が ‘The Seven Samurai’ is an old but interesting movie. (8)
    でも The tour was fun. But I got tired. (12)
    ～けど This curry is hot but tasty. (20)
    しかし Dancing is good for the health, so I will practice it every day from tomorrow.
    …But excessive practice is not good for one’s health. (19)

5. じゃ This is an Italian wine.
    …Well, I’ll buy it. (3)
    ～と Push this button, and change will come out. (23)
    ～たら If it rains, I will not go out. (25)

6. ～ても Even if it rains, I will go out. (25)
## APPENDICES

### I. Numerals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>数字</th>
<th>漢字</th>
<th>例</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>ゼロ、れい</td>
<td></td>
<td>100 ひゃく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>いち</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>200 にひゃく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>に</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>300 さんびゃく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>さん</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>400 よんひゃく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>よん、し</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>500 ごひゃく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>ご</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>600 ろっぴゃく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>ろく</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>700 ななびゃく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>なな、しち</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>800 はっぴゃく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>はち</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>900 きゅうびゃく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>きゅう、く</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1,000 せん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>じゅう</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2,000 にせん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>じゅういち</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>3,000 さんぜん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>じゅうに</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4,000 よんせん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>じゅうさん</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>5,000 ごせん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>じゅうよん、じゅうし</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>6,000 ろくせん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>じゅうご</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>7,000 ななせん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>じゅうろく</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>8,000 はっせん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>じゅうなな、じゅうしち</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>9,000 きゅうせん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>じゅうはち</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>10,000 いちまん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>じゅうきゅう、じゅうく</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>100,000 じゅうまん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>にじゅう</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>1,000,000 ひゃくまん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>さんじゅう</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>10,000,000 せんまん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>よんじゅう</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>100,000,000 いちおく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>ごじゅう</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>17.5 じゅうななてんご</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>ろくじゅう</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>れいてんはちさん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>ななじゅう、しちじゅう</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>はちじゅう</td>
<td>80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>きゅうじゅう</td>
<td>90</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| | | | \[
| | | | \frac{1}{2} にぶんの いち |
| | | | \frac{3}{4} よんぶんの さん |

---

172
II. Expressions of time

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>day</th>
<th>morning</th>
<th>night</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>おととい</td>
<td>おとといのあさ</td>
<td>おとといのばん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the day before yesterday</td>
<td>the morning before last</td>
<td>the night before last</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>きのう</td>
<td>きのうのあさ</td>
<td>きのうのばん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yesterday</td>
<td>yesterday morning</td>
<td>last night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>きょう</td>
<td>けさ</td>
<td>こんばん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>today</td>
<td>this morning</td>
<td>tonight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あした</td>
<td>あしたのあさ</td>
<td>あしたのばん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomorrow</td>
<td>tomorrow morning</td>
<td>tomorrow night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あさって</td>
<td>あさってのあさ</td>
<td>あさってのばん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the day after tomorrow</td>
<td>the morning after next</td>
<td>the night after next</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>まいにち</td>
<td>まいあさ</td>
<td>まいばん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every day</td>
<td>every morning</td>
<td>every night</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>week</th>
<th>month</th>
<th>year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>せんせんしゅう</td>
<td>せんせんげつ</td>
<td>おととし</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(にしゅうかんまえ)</td>
<td>(にかげつまえ)</td>
<td>the year before last</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the week before last</td>
<td>the month before last</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>せんしゅう</td>
<td>せんげつ</td>
<td>きょねん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last week</td>
<td>last month</td>
<td>last year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>こんしゅう</td>
<td>こんげつ</td>
<td>ことし</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this week</td>
<td>this month</td>
<td>this year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>らいしゅう</td>
<td>らいげつ</td>
<td>らいねん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next week</td>
<td>next month</td>
<td>next year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>さららいしゅう</td>
<td>さららいげつ</td>
<td>さららいねん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the week after next</td>
<td>the month after next</td>
<td>the year after next</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>まいしゅう</td>
<td>まいつき</td>
<td>まいとし、まいねん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every week</td>
<td>every month</td>
<td>every year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o'clock</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>いちじ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>にじ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>さんじ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>よじ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ごじ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ろくじ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>しちじ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>はちじ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>くじ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>じゅうじ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>じゅういちじ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>じゅうにじ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>なんじ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>minute</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>っぴん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ふん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ぶん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ぶん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ぶん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ぶん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ぶん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ぶん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ぶん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ぶん</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the days of the week</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>にちようび Sunday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>げつようび Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かようび Tuesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>すいようび Wednesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>もくようび Thursday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>きんようび Friday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>どようび Saturday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>なんようび what day</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>month - 月</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>いちがつ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>にがつ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>さんがつ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>しごつ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ごがつ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ろくがつ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>しちがつ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>はちがつ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>くがつ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>じゅうがつ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>じゅういちがつ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>じゅうにがつ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>なんがつ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| day - 日             |
| ついたち             |
| ふつか               |
| みっか               |
| よっか              |
| いつか               |
| むいか              |
| なのか              |
| ようか              |
| ここのか               |
| とおか              |
| じゅういちにち       |
| じゅうににち         |
| じゅうさんにち     |
| じゅうよっか       |
| じゅうごにち        |
| にじゅうろくにち     |
| にじゅういちにち   |
| にじゅうににち    |
| にじゅうさんにち |
| にじゅうよっか    |
| さんじゅうにち |
| さんじゅういちにち |
| なんにち           |

| 174 |
### III. Expressions of period

#### time duration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>hour - 時間</th>
<th>minute - 分</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 いちじかん</td>
<td>っぷん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 にじかん</td>
<td>ふん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 さんじかん</td>
<td>さんっぷん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 よじかん</td>
<td>よんっぷん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 ごじかん</td>
<td>ごぶん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 ろくじかん</td>
<td>ろっぷん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 ななじかん, しちじかん</td>
<td>ななぶん, しちぶん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 はちじかん</td>
<td>はっぷん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 くじかん</td>
<td>きゅうぶん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 じゅうじかん</td>
<td>じゅっぷん, じっぷん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>? なんじかん</td>
<td>なんぶん</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### period

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>day - 日</th>
<th>week - 週間</th>
<th>month - か月</th>
<th>year - 年</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 いちにち</td>
<td>いっしゅうかん</td>
<td>いくつかげつ</td>
<td>いちねん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 ふつか</td>
<td>にしゅうかん</td>
<td>にかげつ</td>
<td>にねん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 みっか</td>
<td>さんしゅうかん</td>
<td>さんかげつ</td>
<td>さんねん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 よっか</td>
<td>よんしゅうかん</td>
<td>よんかげつ</td>
<td>よねん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 いつか</td>
<td>ごしゅうかん</td>
<td>ごかげつ</td>
<td>ごねん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 むいか</td>
<td>ろくしゅうかん</td>
<td>ろっかげつ, はんとし</td>
<td>ろくねん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 なのか</td>
<td>なんしゅうかん, しちしゅうかん</td>
<td>ななかげつ, しちかげつ</td>
<td>ななねん, しちねん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 ようか</td>
<td>はっしゅうかん</td>
<td>はちかげつ, はっかげつ</td>
<td>はちねん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 ここのか</td>
<td>きゅうしゅうかん</td>
<td>きゅうかげつ</td>
<td>きゅうねん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 とおか</td>
<td>じゅうしゅうかん, じゅしゅうかん</td>
<td>じゅっかげつ, じっかげつ</td>
<td>じゅうねん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>? なんにち</td>
<td>なんしゅうかん</td>
<td>なんかげつ</td>
<td>なんねん</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### IV. Counters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>things</th>
<th>persons</th>
<th>order</th>
<th>thin &amp; flat things</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 ひとつ</td>
<td>ひとり</td>
<td>いちばん</td>
<td>いちまい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 ふたつ</td>
<td>ふたつ</td>
<td>にばん</td>
<td>にまい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 みっつ</td>
<td>さんrin</td>
<td>さんばん</td>
<td>さんまい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 よっつ</td>
<td>よにん</td>
<td>よんばん</td>
<td>よんまい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 いつつ</td>
<td>ごにん</td>
<td>ごばん</td>
<td>ごまい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 むっつ</td>
<td>ろくにん</td>
<td>ろくばん</td>
<td>ろくまい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 ななつ</td>
<td>なにん、しちにん</td>
<td>ななばん</td>
<td>ななまい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 やっつ</td>
<td>はちにん</td>
<td>はちばん</td>
<td>はちまい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 ここのつ</td>
<td>きゅうにん</td>
<td>きゅうばん</td>
<td>きょうまい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 とお</td>
<td>じゅうにん</td>
<td>じゅうばん</td>
<td>じゅうまい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>? いくつ</td>
<td>なんにん</td>
<td>なんばん</td>
<td>なんまい</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>machines &amp; vehicles</th>
<th>age</th>
<th>books &amp; notebooks</th>
<th>clothes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 いちだい</td>
<td>いっさい</td>
<td>いっさつ</td>
<td>いっちゃん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 にだい</td>
<td>にさい</td>
<td>にさつ</td>
<td>にちゃく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 さんだい</td>
<td>さんさい</td>
<td>さんさつ</td>
<td>さんちゃく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 よんだい</td>
<td>よんさい</td>
<td>よんさつ</td>
<td>よんちゃく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 こだい</td>
<td>ごさい</td>
<td>ごさつ</td>
<td>ごちゃく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 ろくだい</td>
<td>ろくさい</td>
<td>ろくさつ</td>
<td>ろくちゃく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 ななだい</td>
<td>なささい</td>
<td>なささつ</td>
<td>ななちゃん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 はちだい</td>
<td>はっさい</td>
<td>はっさつ</td>
<td>はっちゃん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 きゅうだい</td>
<td>きゅうさい</td>
<td>きゅうさつ</td>
<td>きゅうちゃん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 じゅうだい</td>
<td>じゅっさい、じっさい</td>
<td>じゅっさつ、じっさつ</td>
<td>じゅっちゃん、じっちゃん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>? なんだい</td>
<td>なんさい</td>
<td>なんさつ</td>
<td>なんちゃん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frequency</td>
<td>small things</td>
<td>shoes &amp; socks</td>
<td>houses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>いくつか</td>
<td>いくつか</td>
<td>いくつか</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>にかい</td>
<td>にそく</td>
<td>にけん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>さんかい</td>
<td>さんそく</td>
<td>さんげん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>よんかい</td>
<td>よんそく</td>
<td>よんけん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>ごかい</td>
<td>ごそく</td>
<td>ごけん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>ろっかい</td>
<td>ろくそく</td>
<td>ろっけん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>なかなか</td>
<td>ななそく</td>
<td>なかなか</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>はっかい</td>
<td>はっそく</td>
<td>はっけん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>きゅうかい</td>
<td>きゅうそく</td>
<td>きゅうけん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>じゅっかい、じっとかい</td>
<td>じゅっそく、じットそく</td>
<td>じゅっけん、じっとけん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>?</td>
<td>なんかい</td>
<td>なんそく</td>
<td>なんげん</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>floors of a building</th>
<th>thin &amp; long things</th>
<th>drinks &amp; so on in cups &amp; glasses</th>
<th>small animals, fish &amp; insects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>いくつか</td>
<td>いくつか</td>
<td>いくつか</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>にかい</td>
<td>にそく</td>
<td>にけん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>さんかい</td>
<td>さんそく</td>
<td>さんげん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>よんかい</td>
<td>よんそく</td>
<td>よんけん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>ごかい</td>
<td>ごそく</td>
<td>ごけん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>ろっかい</td>
<td>ろくそく</td>
<td>ろっけん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>なかなか</td>
<td>ななそく</td>
<td>なかなか</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>はっかい</td>
<td>はっそく</td>
<td>はっけん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>きゅうかい</td>
<td>きゅうそく</td>
<td>きゅうけん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>じゅっかい、じっとかい</td>
<td>じゅっそく、じットそく</td>
<td>じゅっけん、じっとけん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>?</td>
<td>なんかい</td>
<td>なんそく</td>
<td>なんげん</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### V. Conjugation of verbs

#### I - group

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>まます-form</th>
<th>て-form</th>
<th>dictionary form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>会います [ともだちに 〜]</td>
<td>あいます</td>
<td>あって</td>
<td>あう</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>遊びます</td>
<td>あそびます</td>
<td>あそんで</td>
<td>あそぶ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>洗います</td>
<td>あらいます</td>
<td>あって</td>
<td>ある</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あります</td>
<td>あります</td>
<td>あって</td>
<td>ある</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あります [おまつりが 〜]</td>
<td>あります</td>
<td>あって</td>
<td>ある</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>歩きます [みちを 〜]</td>
<td>あるきます</td>
<td>あるいは</td>
<td>あるく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>言います</td>
<td>いいます</td>
<td>いて</td>
<td>いう</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>行きます</td>
<td>いきます</td>
<td>いて</td>
<td>いく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>急ぎます</td>
<td>いそぎます</td>
<td>いそいで</td>
<td>いそぐ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>要ります [ピザが 〜]</td>
<td>いります</td>
<td>って</td>
<td>いる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>動きます [とけいが 〜]</td>
<td>うごきます</td>
<td>うごいて</td>
<td>うごく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>歌います</td>
<td>うたいます</td>
<td>うって</td>
<td>うる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>売ります</td>
<td>うります</td>
<td>って</td>
<td>うる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>置きます</td>
<td>おきます</td>
<td>いて</td>
<td>おく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>送ります</td>
<td>おくります</td>
<td>くて</td>
<td>おくる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>送ります [ひとを 〜]</td>
<td>おくります</td>
<td>くて</td>
<td>おくる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>押します</td>
<td>おしいます</td>
<td>して</td>
<td>おす</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>思います</td>
<td>おいます</td>
<td>って</td>
<td>おもう</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>思い出します</td>
<td>おみだします</td>
<td>おみだして</td>
<td>おみだす</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>泳ぎます</td>
<td>おおよぎます</td>
<td>およいで</td>
<td>およぐ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>終わります</td>
<td>おわります</td>
<td>おって</td>
<td>おわる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>買います</td>
<td>かいます</td>
<td>って</td>
<td>かう</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>返します</td>
<td>かけます</td>
<td>かけて</td>
<td>かえす</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>帰ります</td>
<td>かえります</td>
<td>かけて</td>
<td>かえる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かかります</td>
<td>かかります</td>
<td>かけて</td>
<td>かかる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>書きます</td>
<td>かきます</td>
<td>いて</td>
<td>かく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>貸します</td>
<td>かします</td>
<td>して</td>
<td>かす</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>勝ちます</td>
<td>かちます</td>
<td>って</td>
<td>かつ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かぶります [ぼうしを 〜]</td>
<td>かぶります</td>
<td>かぶって</td>
<td>かぶる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ない-form</td>
<td>た-form</td>
<td>meaning</td>
<td>lesson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あわ ない</td>
<td>あった</td>
<td>meet [a friend]</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あそば ない</td>
<td>あそんだ</td>
<td>enjoy oneself, play</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あらわ ない</td>
<td>あらった</td>
<td>wash</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>一 ない</td>
<td>あった</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>一 ない</td>
<td>あった</td>
<td>exist, be (inanimate things)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>一 ない</td>
<td>あった</td>
<td>[a festival] be held, take place</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あるか ない</td>
<td>あるいた</td>
<td>walk [along a road]</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>いわ ない</td>
<td>いった</td>
<td>say</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>いか ない</td>
<td>いった</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>いそが ない</td>
<td>いそだ</td>
<td>hurry</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>いら ない</td>
<td>いった</td>
<td>need, require [a visa]</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>うごか ない</td>
<td>うごいた</td>
<td>[a watch] move, work</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>うたわ ない</td>
<td>うたった</td>
<td>sing</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>うら ない</td>
<td>うった</td>
<td>sell</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>おか ない</td>
<td>おいた</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>おくら ない</td>
<td>おきた</td>
<td>send</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>おくら ない</td>
<td>おきた</td>
<td>escort [someone], go with</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>おさ ない</td>
<td>おした</td>
<td>push, press</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>おもわ ない</td>
<td>おもった</td>
<td>think ~</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>おもいださ ない</td>
<td>おもいだた</td>
<td>remember, recollect</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>およが ない</td>
<td>およだ</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>おわら ない</td>
<td>おわた</td>
<td>finish</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かわ ない</td>
<td>かった</td>
<td>buy</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かえさ ない</td>
<td>かえした</td>
<td>give back, return</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かえら ない</td>
<td>かえった</td>
<td>go home, return</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>からら ない</td>
<td>からった</td>
<td>take (referring to time or money)</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かか ない</td>
<td>かいた</td>
<td>write, draw, paint</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かさ ない</td>
<td>しかた</td>
<td>lend</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かた ない</td>
<td>かった</td>
<td>win</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かぶら ない</td>
<td>かぶった</td>
<td>put on [a hat, etc.]</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ます-form</td>
<td>で-form</td>
<td>dictionary form</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>聞きます</td>
<td>ききます</td>
<td>きいて きく</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>聞きます [せんせいに 〜]</td>
<td>きいます</td>
<td>きいて きく</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>切ります</td>
<td>きります</td>
<td>きって きる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>消します</td>
<td>けします</td>
<td>けして けす</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>触ります [ドアに 〜]</td>
<td>さわります</td>
<td>さわって さわる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>知ります</td>
<td>しります</td>
<td>して しる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>吸います [たばこを 〜]</td>
<td>すいます</td>
<td>すって すう</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>住みます</td>
<td>すみます</td>
<td>すんで すむ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>座ります</td>
<td>すわります</td>
<td>すわって すわる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>立ちます</td>
<td>たちます</td>
<td>たって たつ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>出します [てがみを 〜]</td>
<td>だします</td>
<td>だして だす</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>出します</td>
<td>だします</td>
<td>だして だす</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>出します [レポートを 〜]</td>
<td>だします</td>
<td>だして だす</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>使います</td>
<td>つかいます</td>
<td>つかけて つかう</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>使います [えきに 〜]</td>
<td>つきます</td>
<td>ついて つく</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>作ります、造ります</td>
<td>つくります</td>
<td>つくって つくる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>連れて行きます</td>
<td>つれていく</td>
<td>つれていく</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>手伝います</td>
<td>てつだいます</td>
<td>てつだって てつだう</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>泊まります [ホテルに 〜]</td>
<td>とまります</td>
<td>とまって とまる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>取ります</td>
<td>とります</td>
<td>とって とる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>撮ります [しゃしんを 〜]</td>
<td>とります</td>
<td>とって とる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>取ります [としを 〜]</td>
<td>とります</td>
<td>とっても とる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>直します</td>
<td>おさせます</td>
<td>おさせて おさせ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>なくします</td>
<td>なくします</td>
<td>なかして なくす</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>習います</td>
<td>ならいます</td>
<td>なって ならう</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>なります</td>
<td>なります</td>
<td>なって なる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>脱ぎます</td>
<td>ぬぎます</td>
<td>ぬいで ぬぐ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>登ります [やまに 〜]</td>
<td>のぼります</td>
<td>のぼって のぼる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>飲みます</td>
<td>のみます</td>
<td>のんで のる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>飲みます [くすりを 〜]</td>
<td>のみます</td>
<td>のんで のむ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ない-form</td>
<td>た-form</td>
<td>meaning</td>
<td>lesson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>きか ない</td>
<td>きいた</td>
<td>hear, listen</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>きか ない</td>
<td>きいた</td>
<td>ask [a teacher]</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>きら ない</td>
<td>きた</td>
<td>cut, slice</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>けさ ない</td>
<td>けした</td>
<td>turn off</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>さわら ない</td>
<td>さわった</td>
<td>touch [a door]</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>しら ない</td>
<td>した</td>
<td>get to know</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>すわ ない</td>
<td>すった</td>
<td>smoke [a cigarette]</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>すま ない</td>
<td>すんだ</td>
<td>be going to live</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>すわら ない</td>
<td>すわった</td>
<td>sit down</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>たた ない</td>
<td>たった</td>
<td>stand up</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ださ ない</td>
<td>だした</td>
<td>send [a letter]</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ださ ない</td>
<td>だした</td>
<td>take out, withdraw</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ださ ない</td>
<td>だした</td>
<td>hand in [a report]</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>つかわ ない</td>
<td>つかった</td>
<td>use</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>つか ない</td>
<td>ついた</td>
<td>arrive [at the station]</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>つくら ない</td>
<td>つくった</td>
<td>make, produce</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>つれていか ない</td>
<td>つれていった</td>
<td>take (someone)</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>てつだわ ない</td>
<td>てつだった</td>
<td>help (with a task)</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>とまら ない</td>
<td>とまった</td>
<td>stay [at a hotel]</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>とら ない</td>
<td>とった</td>
<td>take, pass</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>とら ない</td>
<td>とった</td>
<td>take [a photograph]</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>とら ない</td>
<td>とった</td>
<td>grow old</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>なおさ ない</td>
<td>なおした</td>
<td>repair, correct</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>なくさ ない</td>
<td>なくした</td>
<td>lose</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ならわ ない</td>
<td>ならった</td>
<td>learn</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>なら ない</td>
<td>なった</td>
<td>become</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ぬが ない</td>
<td>ぬいた</td>
<td>take off (clothes, shoes, etc.)</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>のぼら ない</td>
<td>のぼった</td>
<td>climb [a mountain]</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>のま ない</td>
<td>のんだ</td>
<td>drink</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>のま ない</td>
<td>のんだ</td>
<td>take [medicine]</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ます-form</td>
<td>て-form</td>
<td>dictionary form</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>乗ります [でんしゃに 〜]</td>
<td>のります</td>
<td>のって</td>
<td>のる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>入ります [きっさてんに 〜]</td>
<td>はいります</td>
<td>はいて</td>
<td>はいる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>入ります [だいがくに 〜]</td>
<td>はいります</td>
<td>はいて</td>
<td>はいる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>入ります [おふろに 〜]</td>
<td>はいります</td>
<td>はいて</td>
<td>はいる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>はきます [くつを 〜]</td>
<td>はきます</td>
<td>はいて</td>
<td>はく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>働きます</td>
<td>はたらきます</td>
<td>はたらって</td>
<td>はたら</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>弾きます</td>
<td>ひきます</td>
<td>ひいて</td>
<td>ひく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>引きます</td>
<td>ひきます</td>
<td>ひいて</td>
<td>ひく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>降ります [あめが 〜]</td>
<td>ふります</td>
<td>ふって</td>
<td>ふる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>払います</td>
<td>はらいます</td>
<td>はらって</td>
<td>はらう</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>話します</td>
<td>はなし</td>
<td>はなして</td>
<td>はなす</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>曲がります [みぎへ 〜]</td>
<td>まがります</td>
<td>まがって</td>
<td>まがる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>待ちます</td>
<td>まちます</td>
<td>まって</td>
<td>まつ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>回します</td>
<td>まわります</td>
<td>まわして</td>
<td>まわす</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>持ちます</td>
<td>もちます</td>
<td>もって</td>
<td>もつ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>持って行きます</td>
<td>もっていきます</td>
<td>もっていって</td>
<td>もっていく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>もらいます</td>
<td>もります</td>
<td>もらって</td>
<td>もらう</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>役に立ちます</td>
<td>やくにたちます</td>
<td>やくにたって</td>
<td>やくにたつ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>休みます</td>
<td>よすみます</td>
<td>よすんで</td>
<td>よすむ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>休みます [かいしゃを 〜]</td>
<td>よすみます</td>
<td>よすんで</td>
<td>よすむ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>呼びます</td>
<td>よびます</td>
<td>よんで</td>
<td>よぶ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>読みます</td>
<td>よみます</td>
<td>よんで</td>
<td>よむ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>わかります</td>
<td>わかります</td>
<td>わかって</td>
<td>わかる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>渡ります [はしを 〜]</td>
<td>わたります</td>
<td>わたって</td>
<td>わたる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ない-form</td>
<td>た-form</td>
<td>meaning</td>
<td>lesson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>のらいな</td>
<td>のった</td>
<td>ride, get on [a train]</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>はいらな</td>
<td>はいった</td>
<td>enter [a coffee shop]</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>はいらな</td>
<td>はいった</td>
<td>enter [university]</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>はいらな</td>
<td>はいった</td>
<td>take [a bath]</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>はかな</td>
<td>はいた</td>
<td>put on [shoes, trousers, etc.]</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>はたらか</td>
<td>はたらいた</td>
<td>work</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ひかな</td>
<td>ひいた</td>
<td>play (stringed instrument or piano, etc.)</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ひかな</td>
<td>ひいた</td>
<td>pull</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ふらな</td>
<td>ふった</td>
<td>rain</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>はらわな</td>
<td>はらった</td>
<td>pay</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>はなさな</td>
<td>はなし</td>
<td>speak, talk</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>まがらな</td>
<td>まがった</td>
<td>turn [to the right]</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>まった</td>
<td>まった</td>
<td>wait</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>まわさな</td>
<td>まわした</td>
<td>turn</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>もたな</td>
<td>もった</td>
<td>hold</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>もっていか</td>
<td>もっていった</td>
<td>take (something)</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>もらわな</td>
<td>もらった</td>
<td>receive</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>やくにたた</td>
<td>やくにたった</td>
<td>be useful</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>やすまな</td>
<td>やすんだ</td>
<td>take a rest, take a holiday</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>やすまな</td>
<td>やすんだ</td>
<td>take a day off [work]</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>よばな</td>
<td>よんだ</td>
<td>call</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>よまな</td>
<td>よんだ</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>わからな</td>
<td>わかった</td>
<td>understand</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>わたらな</td>
<td>わたった</td>
<td>cross [a bridge]</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>助詞</td>
<td>ます-form</td>
<td>て-form</td>
<td>dictionary form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>開けます</td>
<td>あけます</td>
<td>かけて</td>
<td>ける</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あげます</td>
<td>あげます</td>
<td>かけて</td>
<td>げる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>集めます</td>
<td>あつめます</td>
<td>あつめて</td>
<td>あつめる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>浴びます [シャワーを～]</td>
<td>あびます</td>
<td>あびて</td>
<td>する</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>います</td>
<td>います</td>
<td>いて</td>
<td>いる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>います [こどもが～]</td>
<td>います</td>
<td>いて</td>
<td>いる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>います [にほんに～]</td>
<td>います</td>
<td>いて</td>
<td>いる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>入れます</td>
<td>いれます</td>
<td>いてて</td>
<td>いる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>入れます [コーヒーを～]</td>
<td>いれます</td>
<td>いてて</td>
<td>いる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>生まれます</td>
<td>まれます</td>
<td>まれて</td>
<td>まる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>起きます</td>
<td>おきます</td>
<td>きて</td>
<td>る</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>教えます</td>
<td>おしえます</td>
<td>おしえて</td>
<td>える</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>教えます [じゅうしょを～]</td>
<td>おしえます</td>
<td>おしえて</td>
<td>える</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>覚えます</td>
<td>おぼえます</td>
<td>おぼえて</td>
<td>える</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>降ります [でんしゃを～]</td>
<td>おります</td>
<td>おりて</td>
<td>る</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>換えます</td>
<td>かえます</td>
<td>かえて</td>
<td>える</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>変えます</td>
<td>かえます</td>
<td>かえて</td>
<td>える</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かけます [でんわを～]</td>
<td>かけます</td>
<td>かけて</td>
<td>かける</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かけます [めがねを～]</td>
<td>かけます</td>
<td>かけて</td>
<td>かける</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>借ります</td>
<td>かります</td>
<td>かけて</td>
<td>いる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>考えます</td>
<td>かんがえます</td>
<td>かんがえて</td>
<td>がえる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>気をつけます [くるまに～]</td>
<td>さをつけて</td>
<td>さをつけて</td>
<td>つける</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>着ます [シャツを～]</td>
<td>きます</td>
<td>きて</td>
<td>する</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>くれます</td>
<td>くれます</td>
<td>くれて</td>
<td>げる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>閉めます</td>
<td>しめます</td>
<td>しめて</td>
<td>める</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>調べます</td>
<td>しらべます</td>
<td>しらべて</td>
<td>るべる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>捨てます</td>
<td>すてます</td>
<td>すてて</td>
<td>てる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>食べます</td>
<td>たべます</td>
<td>たべて</td>
<td>るべる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>足ります</td>
<td>たリます</td>
<td>たリて</td>
<td>るる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>疲れます</td>
<td>つかれます</td>
<td>つかれて</td>
<td>るる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ない-form</td>
<td>た-form</td>
<td>meaning</td>
<td>lesson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あげない</td>
<td>あげた</td>
<td>open</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あげない</td>
<td>あげた</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あつめない</td>
<td>あつめた</td>
<td>collect, gather</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あびない</td>
<td>あびた</td>
<td>take [a shower]</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>いない</td>
<td>いた</td>
<td>exist, be [animate things]</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>いない</td>
<td>いた</td>
<td>have [a child]</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>いない</td>
<td>いた</td>
<td>stay, be [in Japan]</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>いれない</td>
<td>Irete</td>
<td>put in, insert</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>いれない</td>
<td>Irete</td>
<td>make [coffee]</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>うまれない</td>
<td>うまれた</td>
<td>be born</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>おきない</td>
<td>おきた</td>
<td>get up, wake up</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>おしえない</td>
<td>おしえた</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>おしえない</td>
<td>おしめた</td>
<td>tell [an address]</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>おぼえない</td>
<td>おぼえた</td>
<td>memorize</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>おりない</td>
<td>おりた</td>
<td>get off [a train]</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かえない</td>
<td>かえた</td>
<td>exchange, change</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かえない</td>
<td>かえた</td>
<td>change</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かけない</td>
<td>かけた</td>
<td>make [a telephone call]</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かけない</td>
<td>かけた</td>
<td>put on [glasses]</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かりない</td>
<td>かりた</td>
<td>borrow</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かんがえない</td>
<td>かんがえた</td>
<td>think, consider</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>さをつけない</td>
<td>さをつけた</td>
<td>pay attention [to cars], take care</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>きない</td>
<td>きた</td>
<td>put on [shirt, etc.]</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>くれない</td>
<td>くれた</td>
<td>give (me)</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>しめない</td>
<td>しめた</td>
<td>close, shut</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>しらべない</td>
<td>しらべた</td>
<td>check, investigate</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>すてない</td>
<td>すてた</td>
<td>throw away</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>たべない</td>
<td>たべた</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>たりない</td>
<td>たりた</td>
<td>be enough, be sufficient</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>つかれない</td>
<td>つかれた</td>
<td>get tired</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ます-form</td>
<td>て-form</td>
<td>dictionary form</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>つけるます</td>
<td>つけて</td>
<td>つける</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>出かけるます</td>
<td>でかけて</td>
<td>でかける</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>できます</td>
<td>でいて</td>
<td>できる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>出ます [ききさてんを〜]</td>
<td>でます</td>
<td>でる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>出ます [だいがくを〜]</td>
<td>でます</td>
<td>でる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>出ます [おつりが〜]</td>
<td>でます</td>
<td>でる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>止めます</td>
<td>とめて</td>
<td>とめる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>寝ます</td>
<td>ねて</td>
<td>ねる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>乗り換えます</td>
<td>のりかえます</td>
<td>のりかえる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>始めます</td>
<td>はじめます</td>
<td>はじめる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>負けます</td>
<td>まけて</td>
<td>まてる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>見せます</td>
<td>みせます</td>
<td>みせる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>見ます</td>
<td>みて</td>
<td>みる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>迎えます</td>
<td>むかえます</td>
<td>むかえる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>やめます [かいしゃを〜]</td>
<td>やめます</td>
<td>やめる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>忘れます</td>
<td>わすれます</td>
<td>わすれる</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ない-form</td>
<td>た-form</td>
<td>meaning</td>
<td>lesson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>つけ</td>
<td>つかった</td>
<td>turn on</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>でかけ</td>
<td>でかけた</td>
<td>go out</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>でき</td>
<td>できた</td>
<td>be able to, can</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>で</td>
<td>だた</td>
<td>go out [of a coffee shop]</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>で</td>
<td>だた</td>
<td>graduate from [university]</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>で</td>
<td>だた</td>
<td>[change] come out</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>とめ</td>
<td>とめた</td>
<td>stop, park</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ね</td>
<td>ねた</td>
<td>sleep, go to bed</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>_blue</td>
<td>にりかえた</td>
<td>change (trains, etc.)</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>はじめ</td>
<td>はじめた</td>
<td>start, begin</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>まけ</td>
<td>まけた</td>
<td>lose, be beaten</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>みせ</td>
<td>みせた</td>
<td>show</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>み</td>
<td>みた</td>
<td>see, look at, watch</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>むかえ</td>
<td>むかえた</td>
<td>go to meet, welcome</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>やめ</td>
<td>やめた</td>
<td>quit or retire from [a company], give up</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>わすれ</td>
<td>わすれた</td>
<td>forget</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>案内します</td>
<td>ます-form</td>
<td>て-form</td>
<td>dictionary form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>運転します</td>
<td>おすすめ</td>
<td>おすすめ</td>
<td>おすすめする</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>買い物します</td>
<td>かいものします</td>
<td>かいものします</td>
<td>かいものする</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>来ます</td>
<td>きます</td>
<td>きて</td>
<td>くる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>結婚します</td>
<td>けっこんします</td>
<td>けっこんして</td>
<td>けっこんする</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>見学します</td>
<td>けんきょうします</td>
<td>けんきょうして</td>
<td>けんきょうする</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>研究します</td>
<td>けんきゅうします</td>
<td>けんきゅうして</td>
<td>けんきゅうする</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>コピーします</td>
<td>ひパソコンします</td>
<td>ひパソコンして</td>
<td>ひパソコンする</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>散歩します [こうえんを～]</td>
<td>さんぽします</td>
<td>さんぽして</td>
<td>さんぽする</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>残業します</td>
<td>ざんぎょうし</td>
<td>ざんぎょうして</td>
<td>ざんぎょうする</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>します</td>
<td>します</td>
<td>して</td>
<td>する</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>修理します</td>
<td>しゅうりし</td>
<td>しゅうりして</td>
<td>しゅうりする</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>出張します</td>
<td>しゅっちょし</td>
<td>しゅっちょして</td>
<td>しゅっちょする</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>紹介します</td>
<td>しょうかいし</td>
<td>しょうかいして</td>
<td>しょうかいする</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>食事します</td>
<td>しこじし</td>
<td>しこじして</td>
<td>しこじする</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>心配します</td>
<td>しつめいし</td>
<td>しつめいして</td>
<td>しつめいする</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>説明します</td>
<td>せつめいし</td>
<td>せつめいして</td>
<td>せつめいする</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>洗濯します</td>
<td>せんたくし</td>
<td>せんたくして</td>
<td>せんたくする</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>掃除します</td>
<td>そうじし</td>
<td>そうじして</td>
<td>そうじする</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>連れて来ます</td>
<td>つれてき</td>
<td>つれてきて</td>
<td>つれてくる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>電話します</td>
<td>でんわし</td>
<td>でんわして</td>
<td>でんわする</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>引っ越しします</td>
<td>ひっこしし</td>
<td>ひっこして</td>
<td>ひっこする</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>勉強します</td>
<td>べんきょうし</td>
<td>べんきょうして</td>
<td>べんきょうする</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>持って来ます</td>
<td>もってき</td>
<td>もってきて</td>
<td>もってくる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>予約します</td>
<td>よやくし</td>
<td>よやくして</td>
<td>よやすする</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>留学します</td>
<td>りゅうがくし</td>
<td>りゅうがくして</td>
<td>りゅうがくする</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>練習します</td>
<td>れんしゅうし</td>
<td>れんしゅうして</td>
<td>れんしゅうする</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ない-form</td>
<td>た-form</td>
<td>meaning</td>
<td>lesson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>あんないし</td>
<td>あんないした</td>
<td>show around, show the way</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>うんてんし</td>
<td>うんてんした</td>
<td>drive</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>かいものし</td>
<td>かいものした</td>
<td>do shopping</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>こ</td>
<td>きた</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>けっこんし</td>
<td>けっこんした</td>
<td>marry, get married</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>けんがくし</td>
<td>けんがくした</td>
<td>visit some place for study</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>けんきゅうし</td>
<td>けんきゅうした</td>
<td>do research</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>コピーし</td>
<td>コピーした</td>
<td>copy</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>さんぽし</td>
<td>さんぽした</td>
<td>take a walk [in a park]</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ざんぎょうし</td>
<td>ざんぎょうした</td>
<td>work overtime</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>し</td>
<td>した</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>しゅうりし</td>
<td>しゅうりした</td>
<td>repair</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>しゅっちょうし</td>
<td>しゅっちょうした</td>
<td>go on a business trip</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>しようかいし</td>
<td>しようかいした</td>
<td>introduce</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>しこくし</td>
<td>しこくした</td>
<td>have a meal, dine</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>しにばいし</td>
<td>しにばいした</td>
<td>worry</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>せつめいし</td>
<td>せつめいした</td>
<td>explain</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>せんたくし</td>
<td>せんたくした</td>
<td>wash (clothes)</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>そうじし</td>
<td>そうじした</td>
<td>clean (a room)</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>つれてこ</td>
<td>つれてきた</td>
<td>bring (someone)</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>でんわし</td>
<td>でんわした</td>
<td>phone</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ひっこし</td>
<td>ひっこした</td>
<td>move (house)</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>べんきょうし</td>
<td>べんきょうした</td>
<td>study</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>もってこ</td>
<td>もってきた</td>
<td>bring (something)</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>よくし</td>
<td>よくした</td>
<td>reserve, book</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>りゅうがくし</td>
<td>りゅうがくした</td>
<td>study abroad</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>れんしゅうし</td>
<td>れんしゅうした</td>
<td>practice</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Contributors

田中よね Yone Tanaka
The Association for Overseas Technical Scholarship
Matsushita Electric Industrial Co., LTD. Overseas Training Center
Coordinator of Japanese Language Course

牧野昭子 Akiko Makino
The Association for Overseas Technical Scholarship
The Japan Foundation Japanese-Language Institute, Kansai

重川明美 Akemi Shigekawa
The Association for Overseas Technical Scholarship
Matsushita Electric Industrial Co., LTD. Overseas Training Center

御子神慶子 Keiko Mikogami
The Association for Overseas Technical Scholarship
Matsushita Electric Industrial Co., LTD. Overseas Training Center

古賀千世子 Chisako Koga
Kobe University International Students Center
Matsushita Electric Industrial Co., LTD. Overseas Training Center

石井千尋 Chihiro Ishii
YWCA Teachers’ Association

Editorial Advisors

石沢弘子 Hiroko Ishizawa
The Association for Overseas Technical Scholarship

豊田宗周 Munetaka Toyoda
The Association for Overseas Technical Scholarship

Illustrator

田辺澄美 Kiyomi Tanabe

みんなの日本語 初級 I
翻訳・文法解説 英語版

1998年3月16日 初版第1刷発行
2000年4月7日 第4刷発行

編著者 株式会社 スリーエーネットワーク
発行者 小川 崇
発行 株式会社 スリーエーネットワーク
〒101-0064 東京都千代田区猿楽町2-6-3（松栄ビル）
電話 営業 03(3292)5751
編集 03(3292)6521

印刷 日本印刷株式会社

不許複製 ISBN4-88319-107-9 C0081
落丁・乱丁本はお取替えいたします。
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>項目</th>
<th>内容</th>
<th>値段</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>みんなの日本語 初級Ⅰ 本冊</td>
<td>2,500円</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>みんなの日本語 初級Ⅰ 翻訳・文法解説 英語版</td>
<td>2,000円</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>みんなの日本語 初級Ⅰ 翻訳・文法解説 韓国語版</td>
<td>2,000円</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>みんなの日本語 初級Ⅰ 翻訳・文法解説 中国語版</td>
<td>2,000円</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>みんなの日本語 初級Ⅰ カセットテープ（4巻）</td>
<td>6,000円</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>みんなの日本語 初級Ⅱ 本冊</td>
<td>2,500円</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>みんなの日本語 初級Ⅱ 翻訳・文法解説 英語版</td>
<td>2,000円</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>みんなの日本語 初級Ⅱ 翻訳・文法解説 韓国語版</td>
<td>2,000円</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>みんなの日本語 初級Ⅱ カセットテープ（4巻）</td>
<td>6,000円</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

話そう 考えよう 初級日本語 E6 B5判 72頁 1,000円
話そう 考えよう 初級日本語 教師用 B5判 55頁 800円
福岡日本語センター「日本事情」プロジェクト 著
● 日本語力はまだまだ。でも「日本を知りたい！」そんな学習者のために。

はじめのいっぽ 英語版 B5判 208頁 2,233円
はじめのいっぽ ボルトガル語版 B5判 208頁 2,200円
はじめのいっぽ スペイン語版 B5判 208頁 2,200円
はじめのいっぽ カセットテープ 20分1巻 952円
谷口すみ子・萬浪給理・稻子あゆみ・萩原弘毅 著
● コミュニケーションを円滑に進めるテクニックがよくわかる日本語入門テキスト。

日本語初中級 理解から発話へ B5判 本文・語彙220頁 解答・留意点35頁 1,942円
日本語初中級 練習問題 B5判 本文80頁 解答12頁 1,000円
日本語初中級 カセットテープ 90分2巻 3,000円
名古屋YWCA教材作成グループ 著
● 中級に進む前段階で日本語の基本的な構造を把握し、運用できる能力を養う。

ビジネスのための日本語 中級 B5判 190頁 2,500円
ビジネスのための日本語 カセットテープ 45分1巻 2,400円
米田隆介・藤井和子・重野美枝・池田広子 著
● ビジネスの現場ですぐに役立つ会話表現に焦点を当てたテキスト。
Minna no Nihongo